

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

# ENGLISH TRANSLATION

# TRANSMISSION SYSTEM FOR DIGITAL TERRESTRIAL TELEVISION BROADCASTING

# ARIB STANDARD

# ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2

Version 1.0	May	31st	2001
Version 1.1	November	15th	2002
Version 1.2	January	24th	2002
Version 1.3	February	6th	2003
Version 1.4	June	5th	2003
Version 1.5	July	29th	2003
Version 1.6	November	30th	2005
Version 1.7	September	26th	2007
Version 1.8	December	16th	2009
Version 1.9	July	15th	2010
Version 2.0	March	28th	2011
Version 2.1	December	18th	2012
Version 2.2	March	18th	2014

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses

## General Notes to the English Translation of ARIB Standards and Technical Reports

## 1. Notes on Copyright

- The copyright of this document is ascribed to the Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB).
- All rights reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of ARIB.

## 2. Notes on English Translation

- ARIB Standards and Technical Reports are usually written in Japanese. This document is a translation into English of the original document for the purpose of convenience of users. If there are any discrepancies in the content, expressions, etc. between the original document and this translated document, the original document shall prevail.
- ARIB Standards and Technical Reports, in the original language, are made publicly available through web posting. The original document of this translation may have been further revised and therefore users are encouraged to check the latest version at an appropriate page under the following URL: http://www.arib.or.jp/english/index.html.

## Foreword

The Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) investigates and summarizes the basic technical requirements for various radio systems in the form of "ARIB Standards". These standards are developed with the participation of and through discussions amongst radio equipment manufacturers, telecommunication operators, broadcasting equipment manufacturers, broadcasters and users.

ARIB Standards include "government technical regulations" (mandatory standard) that are set for the purpose of encouraging effective use of frequency and preventing interference with other spectrum users, and "private technical standards" (voluntary standards) that are defined in order to ensure compatibility and adequate quality of radio equipment and broadcasting equipment as well as to offer greater convenience to radio equipment manufacturers, telecommunication operators, broadcasting equipment manufacturers, broadcasters and users.

This ARIB Standard is developed for transmission system for digital terrestrial television broadcasting. In order to ensure fairness and transparency in the defining stage, the standard was set by consensus at the ARIB Standard Assembly with the participation of both domestic and foreign interested parties from radio equipment manufacturers, telecommunication operators, broadcasting equipment manufacturers, broadcasters and users.

ARIB sincerely hopes that this ARIB Standard will be widely used by radio equipment manufacturers, telecommunication operators, broadcasting equipment manufacturers, broadcasters and users.

#### NOTE:

Although this ARIB Standard contains no specific reference to any Essential Industrial Property Rights relating thereto, the holders of such Essential Industrial Property Rights state to the effect that the rights listed in the Attachment 1 and 2, which are the Industrial Property Rights relating to this standard, are held by the parties also listed therein, and that to the users of this standard, in the case of Attachment 1, such holders shall not assert any rights and shall unconditionally grant a license to practice such Industrial Property Rights contained therein, and in the case of Attachment 2, the holders shall grant, under reasonable terms and conditions, a non-exclusive and non-discriminatory license to practice the Industrial Property Rights contained therein. However, this does not apply to anyone who uses this ARIB Standard and also owns and lays claim to any other Essential Industrial Property Rights of which is covered in whole or part in the contents of the provisions of this ARIB Standard.

Attachment 1 (N/A)

## (Selection of Option 1)

### (Selection of Option 2)

Attachment 2		(Selec	tion of Option 2)
Patent Applicant/ Holder	Name of Patent	Registration No./ Application No.	Remarks
	誤り訂正復号回路	特許 1585258	Japan
	誤り訂正復号方式	特許 1587162	Japan, United States, Canada, Korea
	誤り検出回路	特許 1587174	Japan, United States
	誤り訂正復号方式	特許 1707686	Japan, United States, Canada, Korea
	直交周波数分割多重ディジタル信号送信 装置および受信装置	特許 2904986	Japan
		5406551	United States
	Method and apparatus for digital	0553841	United Kingdom
_	frequency division multiplexing	0553841	Germany
Japan Broadcasting		0553841	France
Corporation	符号化変調装置および復調装置	特許 2883238	Japan
(NHK)	直交周波数分割多重変調信号伝送方式	特許 3110244	Japan
	放送方式および送受信機	特開平 8-294098	Japan
	ディジタル信号の送信方法、受信方法、送 信装置および受信装置	特開平 9-46307	Japan
	ディジタル信号伝送方法および受信機	特開平 10-93521	Japan
	デジタル信号伝送方法、およびデジタル信 号伝送装置	特開平 10-322388	Japan
	デジタル信号伝送装置	特許 3133958	Japan
	OFDM波伝送装置	特許 3133960	Japan
	デジタル信号送信装置、およびデジタル信 号受信装置	特開平 10-336158	Japan
	送信装置および受信装置	特開 2000-101543	Japan
	OFDM 伝送システムの AC 送受信装置方 法および送信装置、受信装置 Notel	特開 2002-9727	Japan
Japan Broadcasting Corporation (NHK <b>)</b>			
Advanced Digital Television Broadcasting Laboratory	デジタル信号受信装置	特許 2975932	Japan

Patent Applicant/ Holder	Name of Patent	Registration No./ Application No.	Remarks
Japan Broadcasting Corporation	直交周波数分割多重伝送方式とその送信 装置及び受信装置	特許 3083159	Japan
(NHK)	Orthogonal Frequency-division	98800917.X	China
	Multiplex Transmission System, and its	1999-7001638	Korea
Advanced	Transmitter and Receiver	087110598	Taiwan
Digital Television Broadcasting Laboratory Matsushita Electric Industrial Co.,	直交周波数分割多重伝送方式とその送信 装置及び受信装置	特開 2000-236313	Japan
Ltd.			
Advanced Digital Television Broadcasting Laboratory	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.0 <sup>Note b</sup>	patents for ARIB	
Victor Company of Japan, Ltd.	直交周波数分割多重信号送受信装置	特許 2790239	Japan, United States, Germany, France, United Kingdom
	直交周波数分割多重信号送受信装置	特許 2874729	Japan, United States
	直交周波数分割多重信号送受信装置	特許 3055540	Japan
	直交周波数分割多重信号送受信装置	特許 3055541	Japan
	直交周波数分割多重信号の送受信システ ム	特開 2000-224142	Japan
	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.0 Note a	patents for ARIB	
Sony Corporation	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of patents for ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.1*		
	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of patents for ARIB STD-B31 Ver2.2 <sup>*8</sup>		
Mitsubishi			
Electric	再多重化装置および再多重化方法	特許 3216531	Japan
Corporation <sup>®</sup>			
Corporation*			
TOSHIBA AVE Corporation*	デジタル放送システム、デジタル放送演奏 所装置、デジタル放送用送信所装置	特開 2000-32410	Japan
Motorola Japan Ltd.*1	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.3	patents for ARIB	

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

Patent Applicant/ Holder	Name of Patent	Registration No./ Application No.	Remarks
Motorola Japan Ltd.*2	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.5	patents for ARIB	
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd. <sup>*2</sup>	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.5	patents for ARIB	
NEC Corporation	直交周波数分割多重復調装置、及び直交周 波数分割多重復調におけるシンボルの位 相誤差の補正方法*3	特許第 3090137 号	Japan
Japan Broadcasting Corporation	地上デジタルテレビジョン放送における 緊急速報を受信する受信機、及び緊急速報 を送信する送信装置*4	特開 2009-213105	Japan
NHK Engineering Services Inc.	地上デジタルテレビジョン放送における 緊急速報を受信する受信機、及び緊急速報 を送信する送信装置*4	特開 2009-272954	Japan
QUALCOMM	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of STD-B31 Ver1.9 <sup>*5</sup>	patents for ARIB	
Incorporated	Submitted comprehensive confirmation of patents for ARIB STD-B31 Ver2.0 <sup>*7</sup>		
QUALCOMM Incorporated	Broadcast and multicast services in wireless communication systems <sup>*6</sup>	JP 2010-502124	US 20080056387, CN, HK, EP, IN, KR, TW
Note aValidNote bValid*Valid*1ValidNote 1those*2Valid*3Valid*4Valid	for ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.0 (received on May for ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.0 (received on May for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver received at the time of ARIB STD-B31 ver for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver for ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.0 (received on Sep for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver	7 17, 2001) 7 24, 2001) 1.1 (received on Nove 1.3 (received on Janu sion to Ver1.4 (May 1 1.5 (received on July tember 18, 2007) 1.8 (received on Dece	ember 8, 2001) ary 22, 2003) 14, 2003) 22, 2003) ember 7, 2009)

\*5 : Valid for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.9 (received on July 8, 2010)

- \*6 : Valid for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver1.9 (received on January 20, 2011)
- \*7 : Valid for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver2.0 (received on March 18, 2011)
- \*8 : Valid for the revised parts of ARIB STD-B31 Ver2.2 (received on March 11, 2014)

## TOTAL CONTENTS

Transmission System for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting	.1
Attachment Operational Guidelines for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting	89
Appendix1	39

# Transmission System for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting

## Transmission System for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting

## Contents

Chapter 1: General Terms	5
1.1 Objective	$\dots 5$
1.2 Scope	5
1.3 References	5
1.3.1 Normative References	5
1.3.2 Informative References	5
1.4 Terminology	7
1.4.1 Definitions	7
1.4.2 Abbreviations	8
Chapter 2: ISDB-T Overview	10
2.1 Hierarchical transmission	10
2.2 Partial reception	11
2.3 Modes	11
Chapter 3: Channel-Coding Scheme	12
3.1 Basic configuration of the channel coding	17
3.2 TS re-multiplexing	18
3.2.1 Multiplex-frame configuration	18
3.2.2 Model receiver for forming multiplex frame patterns	20
3.2.2.1 Input signals to the hierarchical divider	20
3.2.2.2 Operation of the model receiver from the hierarchical divider to the Viterbi decoding input	21
3.3 Outer code	22
3.4 Division of TS into hierarchical layers	23
3.5 Energy dispersal	24
3.6 Delay adjustment	25
3.7 Byte interleaving	26
3.8 Inner code	27
3.9 Carrier modulation	28
3.9.1 Configuration of the carrier modulator	28
3.9.2 Delay adjustment	28
3.9.3 Bit interleaving and mapping	29
3.9.3.1 DQPSK	29
3.9.3.2 QPSK	30
3.9.3.3 16QAM	31
3.9.3.4 64QAM	32
3.9.4 Modulation-level normalization	33
3.9.5 Data-segment configuration	33
3.10 Combining hierarchical layers	35

3.11 Time an	d frequency interleaving	
3.11.1 Tim	e interleaving	36
3.11.2 Free	quency interleaving	
3.11.2.1	Inter-segment interleaving	
3.11.2.2	Intra-segment interleaving	40
3.12 Frame s	tructure	44
3.12.1 OFI	OM-segment configuration for the differential modulation	44
3.12.2 OFI	OM-segment configuration for the coherent modulation	
3.13 Pilot sig	nals	50
3.13.1 Scat	tered pilot (SP)	50
3.13.2 Con	tinual pilot (CP)	51
3.13.3 TM	CC	51
3.13.4 AC	(Auxiliary Channel)	51
3.14 Transmi	ssion spectrum configuration	53
3.14.1 RF-	signal format	54
3.14.2 Inse	rtion of a guard interval	55
3.15 TMCC s	ignal (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control)	55
3.15.1 Ove	rview	55
3.15.2 Assi	gnment of TMCC carrier bits	55
3.15.3 Refe	erences signal for demodulation of TMCC symbols	
3.15.4 Syn	chronizing signal	
3.15.5 Seg	ment type identification	56
3.15.6 TM	CC information	57
3.15.6.1	System identification	58
3.15.6.2	Indicator of transmission-parameter switching	59
3.15.6.3	Startup control signal (Start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting)	60
3.15.6.4	Partial-reception flag	60
3.15.6.5	Carrier modulation mapping scheme	61
3.15.6.6	Convolutional-coding rate	62
3.15.6.7	Time interleaving length	62
3.15.6.8	Number of segments	63
3.15.6.9	Channel-coding scheme	63
3.15.6.10	Modulation scheme	64
3.16 AC (aux	iliary channel) signals	64
3.16.1 Ove	rview	64
3.16.2 AC	signal bit assignment	64
3.16.3 Refe	erence signal for demodulation of AC symbols	65
3.16.4 Con	figuration identification	65
3.16.5 Add	itional information on the transmission control of modulating waves	65
3.16.6 Seis	mic motion warning information	66
3.16.6.1	Synchronizing signal	67
3.16.6.2	Start and ending flag	67
3.16.6.3	Update flag	68

	3.16.6.4	Signal identification	.69
	3.16.6.5	Detailed seismic motion warning information	.70
	3.16.6.6	CRC	.74
	3.16.6.7	Parity Bit	.75
3.	16.7 Mo	dulation scheme	.75
Chapte	r 4: Freq	uency Utilization Requirements	.76
4.1	Freque	ncy bandwidth and others	.76
4.2	Permiss	sible transmission-frequency deviation	.76
4.3	IFFT sa	mpling frequency and permissible deviation	.76
4.4	Transm	ission-spectrum mask	.77
4.5	Maximu	am permitted power level of spurious emission or unwanted emission	.78
Annex	A: Transr System	nission Parameters and Data Rates for 7MHz and 8MHz Bandwidth s	.79

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

<Blank Page>

## Chapter 1: General Terms

## 1.1 Objective

The purpose of this standard is to define the transmission system for digital terrestrial television broadcasting among several schemes of standard television broadcasting handled by using terrestrial basic broadcasting stations.

## 1.2 Scope

This standard applies to digital terrestrial television broadcasting using UHF and VHF bands. For details on the source coding-scheme and multiplexing-scheme standards among those related to digital terrestrial television broadcasting, see relevant standards.

## 1.3 References

### 1.3.1 Normative References

The following documents are those from which excerpts included in this standard were taken:

- "Ministerial ordinance for amending the entire standard transmission system for digital broadcasting among standard television broadcasting and the like (Ordinance No. 87 of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications, 2011)" (hereinafter referred to as "Ordinance")
- "The definition of the arrangement of TMCC symbol and AC symbol and the configuration of time interleave and frequency interleave (relevant to Section 11 and Section 12 of Ordinance)" (Notification No. 303 of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications, 2011)" (hereinafter referred to as "Notification No. 303")
- "The definition of the configuration of TMCC information (relevant to Section 13 of Ordinance)" (Notification No. 304 of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications, 2011)" (hereinafter referred to as "Notification No. 304")
- "The definition of the configuration of seismic motion warning information (relevant to the Annexed Table 18 of Ordinance)" (Notification No. 306 of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications, 2011)" (hereinafter referred to as "Notification No. 306")
- "Radio Equipment Regulations (Radio Regulatory Commission Rules No.18, 1950)" (Ministerial Ordinance of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications)
- "Transmission equipment for terrestrial basic broadcasting stations that the Minister of Internal Affairs and Communications shall announce separately as prescribed in the Radio Equipment Regulations and their technical requirements" (Notification No. 68 of the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications,2013)" (hereinafter referred to as "Notification No. 68")

### 1.3.2 Informative References

The following are the standards and other documents related to the transmission of digital terrestrial television broadcasting based on this standard:

- ARIB STD-B10, "Service Information for Digital Broadcasting System", ARIB Standard
- ARIB STD-B21, "Receiver for Digital Broadcasting", ARIB Standard (desirable specifications)
- ARIB STD-B24, "Data Coding and Transmission Specification for Digital Broadcasting", ARIB Standard

- ARIB STD-B25, "Access Control System Specifications for Digital Broadcasting", ARIB Standard
- ARIB STD-B29, "Transmission System for Digital Terrestrial Sound Broadcasting", ARIB Standard
- ARIB STD-B32, "Video Coding, Audio Coding and Multiplexing Specifications for Digital Broadcasting", ARIB Standard
- ARIB STD-B46, "Transmission System for Terrestrial Mobile Multimedia Broadcasting based on Connected Segment Transmission", ARIB Standard
- ARIB STD-B53, "Receiver for Terrestrial Mobile Multimedia Broadcasting based on Connected Segment Transmission", ARIB Standard (desirable specifications)
- ARIB STD-B55, "Transmission System for Area Broadcasting", ARIB Standard

## 1.4 Terminology

1.4.1 Definitions

Digital terrestrial broadcasting	Digital broadcasting and high-definition television broadcasting from among the various standard television broadcasting systems using the terrestrial basic broadcasting stations
Digital terrestrial sound broadcasting	Digital broadcasting among various types of ultra-high-frequency-wave broadcasting carried out with terrestrial basic broadcasting stations as defined in Chapter 2, Ordinance
Terrestrial multimedia	Multimedia broadcasting carried out with terrestrial basic
broadcasting	broadcasting stations as defined in Chapter 4, Ordinance
Data segment	Data group that corresponds to the effective carrier. This is an elementary block for channel coding.
OFDM segment	Basic band (1/14 of television-channel bandwidth) for transmission signals, generated by adding control-signal carriers to data carriers. OFDM segment also means signal
Partial reception	Reception of only one OFDM segment at the center of a group of
Mode	Identification of transmission mode based on the spacings
IFFT sampling frequency	IFFT sampling frequency for OFDM modulation on the transmission side
FFT sampling frequency	FFT sampling frequency for model receivers used to form multiple frame patterns
ISDB-T	Digital terrestrial television broadcasting system in which transmission bands consist of 13 OFDM segments
$ISDB$ - $T_{SB}$	Digital terrestrial sound broadcasting system in which transmission bands consist of one or three OFDM segments
OFDM symbol	Transmission symbol for the OFDM transmission signal
OFDM frame	Transmission frame consisting of 204 OFDM symbols
Multiplex frame	Frame that is provided for signal-processing purposes and is used to re-multiplex MPEG-2 TSs to create a single TS. This frame is identical to an OEDM frame in terms of duration
Model receiver	Virtual receiver used to arrange transmission TSPs on a multiplex frame
Carrier symbol	A symbol per OFDM carrier
Segment number	Number used to identify 13 OFDM segments and their
	corresponding data segments
Subchannel number	ISDB-Tsp tuning step with a virtual bandwidth of 1/7 MHz
Connected signal transmission	A type of transmission of ISDB-T <sub>SB</sub> signals arranged without a
C	guard band
Constraint length	Number obtained by adding 1 to the number of delay elements in a convolutional coder
Hierarchical transmission	Simultaneous transmission of multiple OFDM segments that are channel-coded differently
Hierarchical layer information	Channel-coding parameter information on each layer in hierarchical transmission
Control information	Information other than MPEG-2 TS that assists the receiver in demodulation and decoding operations
Additional information	Information that is transmitted using part of the control

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

	information carrier
Seismic motion warning	The information regarding seismic motion warning conducted
Information	based on the regulation of Clause 1 of Article 13, the
	<i>Meteorological Service Act</i> (Act No. 165 of 1952)
	Although seismic motion warning is generally called
	"Earthquake Early Warning," this standard uses the term
	"Seismic Motion Warning," as is the case with the Ordinance
	and Notifications referred to.
Transmission TSP	204-byte packet formed by adding 16-byte parity to 188-byte MPEG-2 TSP
Spurious emission	Emission on a frequency or frequencies which are outside the
	necessary bandwidth and the level of which may be reduced
	without affecting the corresponding transmission of information.
	Spurious emissions include harmonic emissions, parasitic
	emissions, intermodulation products and frequency conversion
	products, but exclude out-of-band emissions.
Out-of-band emission	Emission on a frequency or frequencies immediately outside the
	necessary bandwidth resulting from the modulation process, but
	excluding spurious emissions.
Unwanted emissions	Consist of spurious emission and out-of-band emissions.
Spurious domain	The frequency range beyond the out-of-band domain in which
	spurious emissions generally predominate.
Out-of-band domain	The frequency range, immediately outside the necessary
	bandwidth but excluding the spurious domain, in which
	out-of-band emissions generally predominate. In the case of
	digital terrestrial television broadcasting, the out-of-band
	domain is within +/-15 MHz from the center frequency of the
	necessary bandwidth (the frequency of the boundary between
	the out-of-band and spurious domain is included in the spurious
	domain).
Necessary bandwidth	A 6-MHz-wide frequency band in the case of digital terrestrial television broadcasting.

## 1.4.2 Abbreviations

AC	Auxiliary Channel
CP	Continual Pilot
DBPSK	Differential Binary Phase Shift Keying
DQPSK	Differential Quadrature Phase Shift Keying
FFT	Fast Fourier Transform
IF	Intermediate frequency
IFFT	Inverse Fast Fourier Transform
ISDB	Integrated Services Digital Broadcasting
ISDB-T	ISDB for Terrestrial Television Broadcasting
ISDB-T <sub>SB</sub>	ISDB for Terrestrial Sound Broadcasting
MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group
OCT	Octal notation
OFDM	Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing
PRBS	Pseudo-Random Binary Sequence
QAM	Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
QPSK	Quadrature Phase Shift Keying
RF	Radio frequency
RS	Reed-Solomon

SPScattered PilotSFNSingle Frequency NetworkTMCCTransmission and Multiplexing Configuration ControlTSPTransport Stream Packet

## **Chapter 2: ISDB-T Overview**

With transmission system for digital terrestrial television broadcasting (ISDB-T), one or more transport stream (TS) inputs, defined in "MPEG-2 Systems," are re-multiplexed to create a single TS. This TS is then subjected to multiple channel-coding steps in accordance with the intentions of the service, and is finally sent as a single OFDM signal. ISDB-T also offers time interleaving to provide powerful channel coding for mobile-reception in which variations in field strength are inevitable.

The transmission spectrum of ISDB-T consists of 13 successive OFDM blocks (hereinafter referred to as "OFDM segments"), each bandwidth of which is equal to one fourteenth of a digital terrestrial television-broadcasting channel bandwidth. An OFDM-segment carrier configuration that allows connection of multiple segments makes it possible to provide a transmission bandwidth appropriate in terms of units of segment width for the target media, while at the same time enabling use of the same receiver for both ISDB-T and ISDB-T<sub>SB</sub> (see "Transmission System for Digital Terrestrial Sound Broadcasting," ARIB Standard, ARIB STD-B29).

### 2.1 Hierarchical transmission

Channel coding of ISDB-T is conducted in units of OFDM segments. Therefore, part of a single television channel can be used for fixed-reception service and the rest for mobile-reception service. Such signal transmission is defined as hierarchical transmission. Each hierarchical layer consists of one or more OFDM segments, and parameters such as the carrier modulation scheme, inner-code coding rate, and time interleaving length can be specified for each hierarchical layer. Note that up to three hierarchical layers can be provided and that the segment used for partial reception, which will be discussed later, is also counted as one hierarchical layer.

The number of segments and the set of channel-coding parameters for each hierarchical layer are determined in accordance with the organization information. Note that TMCC signals convey control information that assists in receiver operations.



Fig. 2-1: ISDB-T Overview

## 2.2 Partial reception

As for an OFDM segment at the center of an ISDB-T transmission signal consisting of 13 segments, it is possible to conduct channel coding such that the range of frequency interleaving is limited within the segment. This configuration enables an ISDB-T<sub>SB</sub> receiver to receive one-segment service embedded in a hierarchical television signal (see "Channel Coding Scheme" in Chapter 3).

## 2.3 Modes

In consideration of the suitability of the distance between SFN stations and the robustness to Doppler shift during mobile-reception, ISDB-T offers three different spacings between OFDM carrier frequencies. These spacings are identified as system modes. The available spacings between OFDM carrier frequencies are approximately 4 kHz, 2 kHz, and 1 kHz in modes 1, 2, and 3, respectively.

The number of carriers used varies depending on the mode, but the information bit rate that can be transmitted remains the same in all modes.

## **Chapter 3: Channel-Coding Scheme**

Data transmitted through ISDB-T consists of a group of data (hereinafter referred to as "data segments") that includes multiple TSPs (transport-stream packets) defined in "MPEG-2 Systems." These data segments are subjected to required channel coding. Further, pilot signals are added to data segments in the OFDM framing section to form an OFDM segment (with a bandwidth of 6/14 MHz). A total of 13 OFDM segments are converted to OFDM transmission signals collectively by IFFT.

This channel-coding scheme allows hierarchical transmission in which multiple hierarchical layers with different transmission parameters can be transmitted simultaneously. Each hierarchical layer consists of one or more OFDM segments. Parameters such as the carrier modulation scheme, inner-code coding rate, and time interleaving length can be specified for each hierarchical layer.

In the configuration that contains one-segment service, a center OFDM segment of TV signal can be also received by a digital sound broadcasting receiver.

Note that up to three hierarchical layers can be transmitted.

Fig. 3-1 shows conceptual drawings of hierarchical transmission and partial reception. In addition, Tables 3-1 and 3-2 present OFDM segment transmission parameters identified as system modes and transmission signal parameters, respectively.

Note also that Table 3-3 shows the data rate per segment, while Table 3-4 presents the total data rate for all 13 segments.

Note also that the effective symbol length and guard interval ratio are stipulated by Article 20-4 and Article 20-5 of Ordinance, along with the data rate by Annexed Table 9 of Ordinance.



Fig. 3-1: Hierarchical Transmission and Partial Reception in Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting

Mode		Mode 1		Mode 2		Mode 3	
Segment Bandwidth (Bws)		$6000/14 = 428.571 \cdots \text{ kHz}$					
Spacing between carrier frequencies (Cs)		Bws/108 = 3.968… kHz		Bws/216 = 1.984… kHz		Bws/432 = 0.992… kHz	
ſS	Total count	108	108	216	216	432	432
riei	Data	96	96	192	192	384	384
car	$SP^{*1}$	9	0	18	0	36	0
of	$CP^{*1}$	0	1	0	1	0	1
per	$TMCC^{*2}$	1	5	2	10	4	20
um	AC1*3	2	2	4	4	8	8
Z	$AC2^{*3}$	0	4	0	9	0	19
Carrier modulation scheme		QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK
Symbols per frame		204					
Effe	ctive symbol length	$252~\mu{ m s}$		$504~\mu s$		1008 µs	
Guard interval		63 μs (1/4), 31.5 μs (1/8), 15.75 μs (1/16), 7.875 μs (1/32)		126 μs (1/4), 63 μs (1/8), 31.5 μs (1/16), 15.75 μs (1/32)		252 μs (1/4), 126 μs (1/8), 63 μs (1/16), 31.5 μs (1/32)	
Symbol length		315 µs (1/4), 283.5 µs (1/8), 267.75 µs (1/16), 259.875 µs (1/32)		630 μs (1/4), 567 μs (1/8), 535.5 μs (1/16), 519.75 μs (1/32)		1260 μs (1/4), 1134 μs (1/8), 1071 μs (1/16), 1039.5 μs (1/32)	
Frame length		64.26 ms (1/4), 57.834 ms (1/8), 54.621 ms (1/16), 53.0145 ms (1/32)		128.52 ms (1/4), 115.668 ms (1/8), 109.242 ms (1/16), 106.029 ms (1/32)		257.04 ms (1/4), 231.336 ms (1/8), 218.484 ms (1/16), 212.058 ms (1/32)	
FFT sampling frequency		$2048/252 = 8.126984 \cdots$ MHz					
Inner code		Convolutional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8)					
Outer code		RS (204,188)					

### Table 3-1: OFDM-Segment Parameters

\*1: SP (Scattered Pilot) and CP (Continual Pilot) are used by the receiver for synchronization and demodulation purposes.

\*2: TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control) is control information.

\*3: AC (Auxiliary Channel) is used to transmit additional information on broadcasting. AC1 is available in an equal number in all segments, while AC2 is available only in differential modulated segments.

Mode		Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3		
Number of OFDM segments (Ns)			13			
Bandwidth (Bw)		$\begin{array}{l} Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 5.575 \cdots MHz \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l} Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 5.573 \cdots MHz \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l} Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 5.572 \cdots MHz \end{array}$		
Nun diffe	nber of segments of rential modulations	n <sub>d</sub>				
Nun coh	nber of segments of erent modulations	$n_s (n_s + n_d = N_s)$				
Spaci	ngs between carrier frequencies (Cs)	Bws/108         Bws/216           = $3.968 \cdots kHz$ = $1.984 \cdots kHz$		Bws/432 = 0.992…kHz		
s	Total count	$108\times N_s \texttt{+} \texttt{1} \texttt{=} \texttt{1405}$	$216\times N_s + 1 = 2809$	$432\times N_s + 1 = 5617$		
rier	Data	$96 \times N_s = 1248$	$192 \times N_s = 2496$	$384 \times N_s = 4992$		
car	SP	$9  imes n_{s}$	$18  imes n_{ m s}$	$36  imes n_{\rm s}$		
of o	$CP^{*1}$	nd + 1	nd + 1	nd + 1		
ber	TMCC	$n_s + 5  imes n_d$	$2 \times n_s$ + $10 \times n_d$	$4 \times n_s + 20 \times n_d$		
'n	AC1	$2 \times N_s = 26$	$4 \times N_s = 52$	$8 \times N_s = 104$		
Ź	AC2	$4  imes n_d$	$9  imes n_d$	$19  imes n_d$		
Carrier modulation scheme		QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, DQPSK				
Sy	mbols per frame	204				
Effective symbol length		252 μs	$504 \ \mu s$	1008 μs		
Guard interval		63 μs (1/4), 31.5 μs (1/8), 15.75 μs (1/16), 7.875 μs (1/32)	126 μs (1/4), 63 μs (1/8), 31.5 μs (1/16), 15.75 μs (1/32)	252 μs (1/4), 126 μs (1/8), 63 μs (1/16), 31.5 μs (1/32)		
Symbol length		315 μs (1/4), 283.5 μs (1/8), 267.75 μs (1/16), 259.875 μs (1/32)	630 μs (1/4), 567 μs (1/8), 535.5 μs (1/16), 519.75 μs (1/32)	1260 μs (1/4), 1134 μs (1/8), 1071 μs (1/16), 1039.5 μs (1/32)		
Frame length		64.26 ms (1/4), 57.834 ms (1/8), 54.621 ms (1/16), 53.0145 ms (1/32)	128.52 ms (1/4), 115.668 ms (1/8), 109.242 ms (1/16), 106.029 ms (1/32)	257.04 ms (1/4), 231.336 ms (1/8), 218.484 ms (1/16), 212.058 ms (1/32)		
	Frequency	Inter-segmen	t and intra-segment frequency interleave			
Inter	leave Time	I=0 (0 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols), I=8 (760 symbols), I=16 (1,520 symbols)	I=0 (0 symbols), I=2 (190 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols), I=8 (760 symbols)	I=0 (0 symbols), I=1 (95 symbols), I=2 (190 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols)		
	Inner code*2	Convolutional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8)				
	Byte interleave	Convolutional-byte interleave per 12 bytes				
Outer code		RS (204,188)				

\*1: The number of CPs represents the sum of those CPs in segments, plus one CP added to the right of the entire bandwidth.

\*2: The inner code is taken as a convolutional code in which the mother-code with a constraint length of 7 (number of states: 64) and a coding rate of 1/2 is punctured.

		Number of TSPs transmitted *1 (Mode 1/2/3)	Data rate (kbps) *2			
Carrier modulation	Convolutional code		Guard interval ratio: 1/4	Guard interval ratio: 1/8	Guard interval ratio: 1/16	Guard interval ratio: 1/32
	1/2	12/24/48	280.85	312.06	330.42	340.43
DQPSK	2/3	16/32/64	374.47	416.08	440.56	453.91
	3/4	18/36/72	421.28	468.09	495.63	510.65
QPSK	5/6	20/40/80	468.09	520.10	550.70	567.39
	7/8	21/42/84	491.50	546.11	578.23	595.76
	1/2	24/48/96	561.71	624.13	660.84	680.87
	2/3	32/64/128	748.95	832.17	881.12	907.82
16QAM	3/4	36/72/144	842.57	936.19	991.26	1021.30
	5/6	40/80/160	936.19	1040.21	1101.40	1134.78
	7/8	42/84/168	983.00	1092.22	1156.47	1191.52
	1/2	36/72/144	842.57	936.19	991.26	1021.30
	2/3	48/96/192	1123.43	1248.26	1321.68	1361.74
64QAM	3/4	54/108/216	1263.86	1404.29	1486.90	1531.95
	5/6	60/120/240	1404.29	1560.32	1652.11	1702.17
	7/8	63/126/252	1474.50	1638.34	1734.71	1787.28

Table 3-3: Data Rate of a Single Segment

\*1: Represents the number of TSPs transmitted per frame

\*2: Represents the data rate (bits) per segment for transmission parameters Data rate (bits): Number of TSPs transmitted × 188 (bytes/TSP) × 8 (bits/byte) × (1/frame length)

	Convolutional code	Number of TCDa	Data rate (Mbps)			
Carrier modulation		transmitted (Mode 1/2/3)	Guard interval ratio: 1/4	Guard interval ratio: 1/8	Guard interval ratio: 1/16	Guard interval ratio: 1/32
	1/2	156/312/624	3.651	4.056	4.295	4.425
DQPSK	2/3	208/416/832	4.868	5.409	5.727	5.900
	3/4	234/468/936	5.476	6.085	6.443	6.638
QPSK	5/6	260/520/1040	6.085	6.761	7.159	7.376
	7/8	273/546/1092	6.389	7.099	7.517	7.744
	1/2	312/624/1248	7.302	8.113	8.590	8.851
	2/3	416/832/1664	9.736	10.818	11.454	11.801
16QAM	3/4	468/936/1872	10.953	12.170	12.886	13.276
	5/6	520/1040/2080	12.170	13.522	14.318	14.752
	7/8	546/1092/2184	12.779	14.198	15.034	15.489
	1/2	468/936/1872	10.953	12.170	12.886	13.276
	2/3	624/1248/2496	14.604	16.227	17.181	17.702
64QAM	3/4	702/1404/2808	16.430	18.255	19.329	19.915
	5/6	780/1560/3120	18.255	20.284	21.477	22.128
	7/8	819/1638/3276	19.168	21.298	22.551	23.234

Table 3-4: Total Data Rate \*1

\*1: This table shows an example of the total data rate in which the same parameters are specified for all 13 segments.

Note that the total data rate during hierarchical transmission varies depending on the hierarchical parameter configuration. In the case shown above, the data volume transmitted by all 13 segments is equal to the sum of all data volumes transmitted by these segments that can be determined based on Table 3-3.

## 3.1 Basic configuration of the channel coding

Multiple TSs output by the MPEG-2 multiplexer are fed to the TS re-multiplexer such that TSPs can be properly arranged for signal processing one data segment at a time. In the re-multiplexer, each TS is first converted into 188-byte burst-signal form by means of a clock having a rate four times higher than that of the FFT sample clock. An outer code is then applied, and these TSs are converted into a single TS.

When hierarchical transmission is performed, the TS is divided into multiple hierarchical layers in accordance with the hierarchy information. These layers are then fed to a maximum of three parallel-processor blocks.

In the parallel processor, digital data-processing steps including error-correction coding, interleaving, and carrier modulation are primarily conducted. Note also that the difference in delay time (generated in byte-interleaving and bit-interleaving signal processes) between hierarchical layers is adjusted in advance to adjust timing. Error correction, interleaving length, and the carrier modulation scheme are specified for one hierarchical layer independently.

Following parallel processing, hierarchical layer signals are combined and then fed to the time and frequency interleaving sections to ensure the improvement of error-correction effectively against both the variation of field strength and multipath interference in mobile-reception.

Convolutional interleaving is used as the time-interleaving scheme to reduce both transmission and reception delay times and minimize the receiver memory size. As for frequency interleaving, both inter-segment and intra-segment interleaving are employed to ensure the appropriate segment structure and proper interleaving.

To ensure that the receiver properly performs demodulation and decoding in hierarchical transmission in which multiple sets of transmission parameters are used, a TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control) signal is also transmitted using specific carriers. And also AC (Auxiliary Channel) signal assigned to specific carriers is used to transmit additional information on broadcasting.

OFDM frame consists of information data, pilot signals for synchronization and reproduction, TMCC signal, and AC signal. Once formation of a frame is complete, all signals are converted to OFDM transmission signals by IFFT process.

Note that the basic configuration and others of the transmission signals are stipulated in Article 20-1, Article 21, Article 11-2, Article 11-6, Article 12-2, Article 15, and so on of Ordinance.





Fig. 3-2: Blocks Available in the Channel Coding

## 3.2 TS re-multiplexing

#### 3.2.1 Multiplex-frame configuration

A re-multiplexed transport stream (TS) is formed by multiplex frames as elementary units, each of which consists of n pieces of transport-stream packets (TSPs). Table 3-5 shows the numbers of TSPs used for different transmission modes and guard-interval ratios.

Each of the TSPs comprising a multiplex frame is 204 bytes in length, consisting of 188-byte program data and 16-byte null data. This TSP is referred to as "transmission TSP." The multiplex-frame length matches that of the OFDM frame when the clock rate for sending transmission TSP is increased to four times that of the FFT sample clock rate.

As shown in Fig. 3-3, each of the transmission TSPs within a multiplex frame is transmitted by hierarchical layer X of an OFDM signal (layer X designates either layer A, B, or C) or belongs to a null packet (TSP<sub>null</sub>) that is not transmitted as an OFDM signal. The arrangement of transmission TSPs within a multiplex frame is determined in advance to ensure that it is identical to that of the TSs that will be reproduced by the model receiver shown in Fig. 3-4.

	Number of transmission TSPs included in one multiplex frame					
Mode	Guard-interval ratio 1/4	Guard-interval ratio 1/8	Guard-interval ratio 1/16	Guard-interval ratio 1/32		
Mode 1	1280	1152	1088	1056		
Mode 2	2560	2304	2176	2112		
Mode 3	5120	4608	4352	4224		

### Table 3-5: Multiplex-Frame Configuration

(Ordinance Annexed Table 15, Item 1)

Because the number of transport-stream packets that can be transmitted per unit time varies substantially depending on the parameters specified for each hierarchical layer, it is generally not possible to achieve consistency between TSs input to the re-multiplexer and a single TS output from it. However, the addition of an appropriate number of null packets allows interfacing between the re-multiplexer and modulator during transmission of transport streams at a constant clock rate, regardless of which transmission parameters are specified.

Because multiplex-frame length is the same as OFDM-frame length, the receiver can reproduce transport-stream synchronization based on OFDM-signal synchronization, thus ensuring improved synchronization performance.

Correlating TSP arrangement within a multiplex frame with "division of TS into multiple hierarchical layers and combining of these layers" allows the receiving side to select the same single TS as the one transmitted from among multiple signals of different layers, and to reproduce that TS.

For this reason, we define the model receiver operation on the transmitting side to indirectly stipulate TSP arrangement. The receiving side can reproduce TS without any TSP position information when it operates in the same manner as the model receiver.

Fig. 3-3 shows an example of a re-multiplexed transport stream.



Fig. 3-3: Example of a Re-Multiplexed Transport Stream (Mode 1, Guard Interval of 1/8)

#### 3.2.2 Model receiver for forming multiplex frame patterns

TSPs are arranged on a multiplex frame in accordance with the configuration of TS reproduced by the model receiver shown in Fig. 3-4. Note that a clock written in this section means an FFT sampling clock.



Fig. 3-4: Model Receiver for Forming Multiplex Frame Patterns

#### 3.2.2.1 Input signals to the hierarchical divider

Upon completion of processing such as carrier demodulation and de-interleaving, input signals to the hierarchical divider are arranged in ascending order of segment number, and also in ascending order of the carrier frequency of information symbol within a segment (obtained by excluding the carriers of control symbol). Fig. 3-5 shows an example in which two hierarchical layers are available (one layer modulated through DQPSK 1/2 with 5 segments, and the other modulated through 64QAM 7/8 with 8 segments), and a guard interval of 1/8 and Mode 1 are selected.

During the period of one OFDM symbol, data the size of  $480 (96 \times 5)$  carriers is input to hierarchical layer A, followed by the input of data the size of  $768 (96 \times 8)$  carriers to hierarchical layer B and a null signal the size of 1056 carriers.

The null signal corresponds to the sum of samplings which are equivalent to pilot signals inserted by the OFDM framing section, FFT sampling in excess of the net signal band, and guard-interval duration. This operation is repeated as many times as 204 symbols for the duration of one OFDM frame.

Note that delays are adjusted such that the periods of time required for differential or coherent demodulation become the same.



Fig. 3-5: Time Arrangement for Input Signals to Hierarchical Layers

## 3.2.2.2 Operation of the model receiver from the hierarchical divider to the Viterbi decoding input

Signal, divided into multiple hierarchical layers, is then subjected to de-puncturing before being stored in the hierarchical buffer. In this case, we assume that the processing delay time is the same for all layers, and that there is no delay time for the model receiver.

At this time, the number of bits  $B_{X,k}$  that are input to and stored in the hierarchical buffer upon input of the kth datum to hierarchical layer X in a single multiplex frame can be determined by the following formula:

$$B_{X,k} = 2 \times ([k \times S_x \times R_x] - [(k-1) \times S_x \times R_x])$$

where [] indicates that all digits to the right of the decimal point are discarded. Note that  $R_X$  represents the convolutional-code coding rate at hierarchical layer X. Note also that  $S_X$  takes one of the values given in Table 3-6, depending on the modulation scheme selected for hierarchical layer X.

Modulation scheme	Sx
DQPSK/QPSK	2
16QAM	4
64QAM	6

Table 3-6: S<sub>x</sub> Value

Switch S1 is switched over to another hierarchical buffer when data the size of one TS packet (408 bytes\*) is input to the hierarchical buffer. This data is transferred to the TS buffer provided in the TS reproduction section. In this case, we assume that data transfer is instantaneous.

\* Convolutional coding of a single TS packet (204 bytes) of data produces 408 bytes, as the coding rate of the mother code of the convolutional code is 1/2.

The TS reproduction section checks the TS buffer every TS packet period (408 clocks). If there is more data than the size of one TS packet, this section switches S2 over to the TS buffer position and reads out one TS packet of data. When there is no data in the TS buffer, the TS reproduction section switches S2 over to the null TSP position and transmits a null packet.

Switch S3 is used to alternately switch between two TS reproduction sections for inputting a hierarchical combiner output signal. In Mode 1, switching is performed at the beginning of an OFDM frame. Switch S4 is used to switch between TS reproduction-section signal outputs. This switch is switched over to the same position as S3 in three TS packet period ( $408 \times 3$  clocks) following the switching of S3, that is, at the beginning of an OFDM frame.

In Modes 2 and 3, switching of S3 and S4 is performed at 1/2 OFDM-frame intervals (102 OFDM-symbol intervals) and 1/4 OFDM-frame intervals (51 OFDM-symbol intervals), respectively.

### 3.3 Outer code

A shortened (204,188) Reed-Solomon code is used in every TSP as an outer code. The shortened (204,188) Reed-Solomon code is generated by adding 51-byte 00HEX at the beginning of the 188-byte input data bytes, processing with the (255,239) Reed-Solomon code, and then removing these 51 bytes.

The GF  $(2^8)$  element is used as the Reed-Solomon code element. The following primitive polynomial p (x) is used to define GF  $(2^8)$ :

$$p(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$$

Note also that the following polynomial g (x) is used to generate (204,188) shortened Reed-Solomon code:

$$g(x) = (x - \lambda^0) (x - \lambda^1) (x - \lambda^2) \cdots (x - \lambda^{15})$$
 provided that  $\lambda = 02$  HEX

(Ordinance Annexed Table 12, Item 1)

#### [Description]

Shortened (204,188) Reed-Solomon code is the same as the outer code used for digital satellite broadcasting, and can correct up to 8 random bytes in error among 204 bytes.

Fig. 3-6 shows MPEG2 TSP and TSP that is error-protected by RS code. Note that the error-protected 204-byte packet is also called "transmission TSP."

Synchronization	Data
(1 byte)	(187 bytes)

#### (a) MPEG2 TSP

Synchronization	Data	Parity
(1 byte)	(187 bytes)	(16 bytes)

(b) TSP error-protected by RS code (transmission TSP)

Fig. 3-6: MPEG2 TSP and Transmission TSP

## 3.4 Division of TS into hierarchical layers

The hierarchical divider divides re-multiplexed TS into multiple portions (transmission TSPs, each of which is 204 bytes in length, containing all bytes from the byte next to the TS synchronization byte to the next synchronization byte), and assigns each portion to the specified hierarchical layer. At the same time, the divider removes the null packet. The hierarchical layer to which each of the transmission TSPs belongs is specified by hierarchy information based on organization information. The maximum number of hierarchical layers must be three. Note also that OFDM-frame synchronization shifts by one byte, to the beginning of the information bytes.

Fig. 3-7 shows an example of the division of TS into two hierarchical layers.



S: Synchronization byte I: Information P: Parity

Fig. 3-7: An Example of Hierarchical Divider Operation

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

### 3.5 Energy dispersal

Energy dispersal is conducted at each hierarchical layer using a circuit, shown in Fig. 3-8, that is generated by a PRBS (Pseudo Random Bit Sequence). All signals other than the synchronization byte in each of the transmission TSPs at different hierarchical layers are EXCLUSIVE ORed using PRBSs, on a bit-by-bit basis.

The initial value of the register in the PRBS-generating circuit must be "100101010000000" (arranged in ascending order of bits, from left to right), and this value must be initialized every OFDM frame. At this time, the beginning of an OFDM frame must be the MSB of the byte next to the transmission TSP's synchronization byte. Note also that the shift register must also perform shifting during the synchronization byte.



#### Fig. 3-8: PRBS-Generating Polynomial and Circuit

(Ordinance Annexed Table 15, Annexed Statement 1)

## 3.6 Delay adjustment

Delay adjustment associated with byte interleaving, intended to provide identical transmission and reception delay times for all hierarchical layers, is conducted on the transmitting side.

An appropriate adjustment value must be selected and specified for each hierarchical layer from among those (equivalent to the number of transmission TSPs) shown below, such that all delays, including transmission and reception delays caused by byte interleaving (11 transmission TSPs), are one frame in length.

Carrier Convolutional Delay-adjust			stment value (number of transmission TSPs)			
modulation	code	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3		
	1/2	$12 \times \text{N-}11$	$24 \times \text{N-11}$	$48 \times \text{N-11}$		
DQPSK	2/3	$16 \times \text{N-11}$	$32 \times \text{N-11}$	$64 \times N-11$		
	3/4	$18 \times \text{N-11}$	$36 \times \text{N-11}$	$72 \times N-11$		
QPSK	5/6	$20 \times \text{N-11}$	$40 \times \text{N-11}$	$80 \times N-11$		
	7/8	$21 \times \text{N-}11$	$42 \times \text{N-11}$	$84 \times N-11$		
	1/2	$24 \times \text{N-11}$	$48 \times \text{N-11}$	$96 \times N-11$		
	2/3	$32 \times \text{N-11}$	$64 \times \text{N-11}$	$128 \times \text{N-}11$		
16QAM	3/4	$36 \times \text{N-11}$	$72 \times N-11$	$144 \times \text{N-11}$		
	5/6	$40 \times \text{N-11}$	$80 \times N$ -11	$160 \times \text{N-11}$		
	7/8	$42 \times \text{N-11}$	$84 \times \text{N-11}$	$168 \times \text{N-11}$		
	1/2	$36 \times N$ -11	$72 \times N-11$	$144 \times \text{N-11}$		
	2/3	$48 \times \text{N-11}$	$96 \times N-11$	$192 \times \text{N-}11$		
64QAM	3/4	$54 \times \text{N-11}$	$108 \times \text{N-11}$	$216 \times \text{N-}11$		
	5/6	$60 \times \text{N-11}$	$120 \times \text{N-11}$	$240 \times \text{N-11}$		
	7/8	$63 \times \text{N-11}$	$126 \times \text{N-11}$	$252 \times \text{N-11}$		

Table 3-7: Delay-Adjustment Values Required as a Result of Byte Interleaving

N represents the number of segments used by that hierarchical layer. (Ordinance Annexed Table 15, Annexed Statement 2, Item 2)

With hierarchical transmission, it is possible to specify different sets of transmission parameters (number of segments, inner-code coding rate, and modulation scheme) for different hierarchical layers. In this case, however, the transmission bit rate for one layer differs from that for another layer, resulting in different transmission capacities calculated as the time periods from coding of the inner code on the transmitting side to decoding on the receiving side.

Therefore, the amount of transmission TSP delay (11 TSPs) caused by byte interleaving (discussed later) for one layer differs from that for another layer when it is converted to delay time.

To compensate for this relative difference in delay time between hierarchical layers, delay adjustment is conducted at each layer prior to byte interleaving, in accordance with the transmission bit rate.

## 3.7 Byte interleaving

The 204-byte transmission TSP, which is error-protected by means of RS code and energy-dispersed, undergoes convolutional byte interleaving. Interleaving must be 12 bytes in depth. Note, however, that the byte next to the synchronization byte must pass through a reference path that causes no delay.

Fig. 3-9 shows the byte interleaving circuit.

In the inter-code interleaving circuit, path 0 has no delay. The memory size for path 1 must be 17 bytes, that for path 2 be  $17 \times 2 = 34$  bytes, and so on. Input and output must be switched over to a different path every byte, in a sequential and cyclic manner, in ascending order of path number (path 0 -> path 1 -> path 2 ---- path 11 -> path 0 -> path 1 -> path 2).



Fig. 3-9: Byte Interleaving Circuit

(Ordinance Annexed Table 15, Annexed Statement 2, Item 1)
# 3.8 Inner code

The inner code is a punctured convolutional code with a mother code having a constraint length k of 7, and a coding rate of 1/2. The generating polynomial of the mother code must be  $G1 = 171_{OCT}$  and  $G2 = 133_{OCT}$ . Fig. 3-10 shows the coding circuit of the mother code with constraint length k of 7, and a coding rate of 1/2.

Table 3-8 shows the selectable inner-code coding rates and transmission signal sequence that are punctured at that time. Note that the puncturing pattern must be reset such that the patterns shown in Table 3-8 are initiated by frame synchronization. This is intended to ensure improved receiver reliability in compensating for synchronization between puncturing patterns.



Fig. 3-10: Coding Circuit of a Convolutional Code with Constraint Length k of 7 and a Coding Rate of 1/2

Coding rate	Puncturing pattern	Transmission-signal sequence
1/2	X : 1 Y : 1	X1, Y1
2/3	X:10 Y:11	X1, Y1, Y2
3/4	X : 1 0 1 Y : 1 1 0	X1, Y1, Y2, X3
5/6	X : 1 0 1 0 1 Y : 1 1 0 1 0	X1, Y1, Y2, X3 Y4, X5
7/8	X:1000101 Y:111010	X1, Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4, X5, Y6, X7

Table 3-8: Inner-	-Code Codina	n Rates and	Transmission-Sig	nal Sequence
		j Nales anu	Transmission-oly	nai Sequence

(Ordinance Annex Table 12, Item 3 and Item 4)

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

# 3.9 Carrier modulation

### 3.9.1 Configuration of the carrier modulator

In the carrier modulation process, the input signal is bit-interleaved and mapped through the schemes specified for each hierarchical layer. Fig. 3-11 shows the carrier-modulator configuration.



Fig. 3-11: Carrier-Modulator Configuration

# 3.9.2 Delay adjustment

Transmission and reception delays equivalent to 120 carrier symbols occur as a result of bit interleaving of the carrier modulator. The delay time varies depending on the carrier modulation scheme, that is, the number of bits comprising the carrier symbol.

This difference in delay time is corrected at the bit interleaving input side through the addition of the delay-adjustment value shown in Table 3-9 such that the total transmission and reception delays are equal to 2 OFDM symbols.

Carrier	Delay-adj	ustment value (numl	per of bits)
modulation	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
DQPSK QPSK	384 × N-240	768 × N-240	$1536 \times \text{N-}240$
16QAM	$768 \times N-480$	$1536 \times N-480$	$3072 \times N-480$
64QAM	$1152 \times N-720$	$2304 \times \text{N-}720$	$4608\times\text{N-}720$

Table 3-9: Delay-Adjustment Values Required as a Result of Bit Interleaving

N represents the number of segments used by that hierarchical layer.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1 Note 2)

# 3.9.3 Bit interleaving and mapping

### 3.9.3.1 DQPSK

The input signal must be 2 bits per symbol and p/4-shift DQPSK-mapped to output multi-bit I- and Q-axes data. Upon completion of serial-parallel conversion, the 120-bit delay element shown in Fig. 3-12 is inserted into the phase-calculator input for bit interleaving. Figs. 3-12 and 3-13 show the system diagram and mapping constellation, respectively.



Fig. 3-12: π/4-Shift DQPSK Modulation System Diagram

Table 3-10: Phase Calculation

input b0' b1'	output θj
0 0	π/4
0 1	-π/4
1 0	$3\pi/4$
1 1	-3π/4



Fig. 3-13: π/4-Shift DQPSK Constellation

The following shows the phase shift:

$$egin{pmatrix} I_j \ Q_j \end{pmatrix} = egin{pmatrix} \cos heta_j & -\sin heta_j \ \sin heta_j & \cos heta_j \end{pmatrix} egin{pmatrix} I_{j-1} \ Q_{j-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

Provided that  $(I_j, Q_j)$  and  $(I_{j-1}, Q_{j-1})$  represent the output symbol and the OFDM symbol immediately preceding the output symbol, respectively

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1, Item 1)

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

#### 3.9.3.2 QPSK

The input signal must be 2 bits per symbol and QPSK-mapped to output multi-bit I- and Q-axes data. To conduct mapping, the 120-bit delay element shown in Fig. 3-14 is inserted into the mapping input for bit interleaving.

Figs. 3-14 and 3-15 show the system diagram and mapping constellation, respectively.



Fig. 3-15: QPSK Constellation

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1, Item 2)

#### 3.9.3.3 16QAM

The input signal must be 4 bits per symbol and 16QAM-mapped to output multi-bit I- and Q-axes data. To conduct mapping, the delay elements shown in Fig. 3-16 are inserted into b1 to b3 for bit interleaving.

Figs. 3-16 and 3-17 show the system diagram and mapping constellation, respectively.



Fig. 3-17: 16QAM Constellation

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1, Item 3)

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

### 3.9.3.4 64QAM

The input signal must be 6 bits per symbol and 64QAM-mapped to output multi-bit I- and Q-axes data. To conduct mapping, the delay elements shown in Fig. 3-18 are inserted into b1 to b5 for bit interleaving.

Figs. 3-18 and 3-19 show the system diagram and mapping constellation, respectively.





(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1, Item 4)

#### 3.9.4 Modulation-level normalization

When we let the points in the constellations shown in Figs. 3-13, 3-15, 3-17, and 3-19 be expressed as Z (= I + jQ), the transmission-signal level must be normalized by multiplying each of these points by the corresponding normalization factor shown in Table 3-11.

As a result, the average OFDM symbol power becomes 1 regardless of which modulation scheme is used.

Carrier modulation scheme	Normalization factor
$\pi/4$ -shift DQPSK	$\mathrm{Z}/\sqrt{2}$
QPSK	$Z/\sqrt{2}$
16QAM	$Z/\sqrt{10}$
64QAM	$Z/\sqrt{42}$
(Ondinense A	Annual Table 10 Annual

Table 3-11: Modulation Level Normalization

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 1, Note 4)

#### 3.9.5 Data-segment configuration

A data segment is equivalent to data part in an OFDM segment shown in Section 3-12. Data segments consist of 96, 192, and 384 carrier symbols in Modes 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Note that  $S_{i,j,k}$  in the figure represents the kth segment carrier symbol. Note also that "i" must be equivalent to the carrier direction in the OFDM segment, while "j" must be equivalent to the symbol direction in the OFDM segment. Fig. 3-20 shows the data-segment configuration.



### (a) Data-segment configuration in Mode 1



#### (b) Data-segment configuration in Mode 2



(c) Data-segment configuration in Mode 3

Fig. 3-20: Data-Segment Configurations

# 3.10 Combining hierarchical layers

Signals of different hierarchical layers, subjected to channel coding and carrier modulation by the specified parameters, must be combined and inserted into data segments and undergo speed conversion.

Fig. 3-21 shows the configuration of the hierarchical combiner.





In the figure shown above,  $n_c$  is 96, 192, and 384 in Modes 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Note also that  $N_{s1} + N_{s2} + N_{s3} = 13$ .

(Ordinance Annexed Table 10, Annexed Statement 2)

# 3.11 Time and frequency interleaving

# 3.11.1 Time interleaving

Once signals of different hierarchical layers are combined, they must be time-interleaved in units of modulation symbols (for each of the I and Q axes), as shown in Fig. 3-22.



 $n_{c}\ is$  96, 192, and 384 in Modes 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Fig. 3-22: Configuration of the Time Interleaving Section

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 1)

Fig. 3-23 shows the configuration of one of the intra-data segment time interleaving sections presented in Fig. 3-22. Note that "I" in the figure is a parameter related to interleaving length that can be specified for each hierarchical layer. This parameter is shown in Table 3-12.



 $n_c$  is 96, 192, and 384 in Modes 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Fig. 3-23: Configuration of the Intra-segment Time Interleaving Section

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 2)

The time interleaving length must be specified as I for each hierarchical layer, independently of other layers. The resulting difference in delay time must be corrected on the transmitting side using the number of symbols or the delay appropriate for each layer shown in Table 3-12, such that the total number of transmission and reception delays is a multiple of the number of frames.

Mode 1     Mode 1       Number of of delayed delay-adju frames in symbols and reception     Length (I)		Mode 2		Mode 3						
Length (I)	Number of delay-adju stment symbols	Number of delayed frames in transmission and reception	Length (I)	Number of delay-adju stment symbols	Number of delayed frames in transmission and reception	Length (I)	Number of delay-adju stment symbols	Number of delayed frames in transmission and reception		
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
4	28	2	2	14	1	1	109	1		
8	56	4	4	28	2	2	14	1		
16	112	8	8	$\overline{56}$	4	4	$\overline{28}$	2		

Table 3-12: Time Interleaving Lengths and Delay Adjustment Values

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 3(2))

Note that this delay adjustment must be conducted on signals prior to time interleaving.

### [Description]

The number of transmission and reception delay frames that are time interleaved after delay adjustment is shown in Table 3-12 for each hierarchical layer. The same applies to a single hierarchical layer.

Time interleaving is intended to ensure improved the robustness against fading interference by randomizing symbol data in terms of the time after modulation. Specification of the interleaving length for each hierarchical layer allows the optimal interleaving length to be specified for the target channel if each layer employs a different channel, that is, a type of reception that differs from that of other layers.

Fig. 3-24 shows the arrangement of carriers following time interleaving.

The purpose of using convolutional interleaving as the time interleaving method is to reduce the total transmission and reception delay time and decrease the amount of receiver memory taken up.



Fig. 3-24: Arrangement of Carriers Following Time Interleaving (Mode 1, I=8)

#### 3.11.2 Frequency interleaving

Fig. 3-25 shows the configuration of the frequency interleaving section.

During segment division, data-segment numbers 0 to 12 are assigned sequentially to the partial-reception portion, differential modulations (segments for which DQPSK is specified for modulating carriers), and coherent modulation (segments for which QPSK, 16QAM, or 64QAM is specified for modulating carriers).

As for the relationship between the hierarchical configuration and data segments, data segments of the same hierarchical level must be successively arranged, and hierarchical layers must be named layer A, B, and C sequentially, in ascending order of data-segment number (that is, from smaller to larger segment numbers).

Inter-segment interleaving must be conducted on two or more data segments when they belong to the same type of modulated portion, even if their hierarchical levels differ.



Fig. 3-25: Configuration of the Frequency Interleaving Section

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 4)

#### [Description]

Inter-segment interleaving is not conducted on the partial-reception portion, as it is assumed that the receiver designed to receive only that segment will be used.

Note also that because the differential and coherent modulations differ in terms of frame structure, as shown in Section 3-12 ("Frame structure"), inter-segment interleaving is performed in each group.

Inter-segment interleaving conducted across layer boundaries is intended to maximize the frequency interleaving effect.

# 3.11.2.1 Inter-segment interleaving

Inter-segment interleaving must be conducted on each of the differential modulation (DQPSK) and coherent modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM), as shown in Figs. 3-26 (a), 3-26 (b), and 3-26 (c).

Note that  $S_{i,j,k}$ , and n in the figures represent carrier symbols in the data-segment configuration

(Fig. 3-20) and the number of segments assigned to the differential and coherent modulation, respectively.

ŀ	←	Data seg No.	jme 0	<sup>nt</sup> →	<	Data seg No.	jmei 1	$^{nt} \rightarrow$	← Data segment → No. 2					Contemporary Contemporary Contemporary Contemporary Data segment - No. n-1			
	S <sub>0,0,0</sub> = S <sub>0</sub>	S <sub>1,0,0</sub> = S <sub>1</sub>		S <sub>95,0,0</sub> = S <sub>95</sub>	S <sub>0,0,1</sub> = S <sub>96</sub>	S <sub>1,0,1</sub> = S <sub>97</sub>		S <sub>95,0,1</sub> = S <sub>191</sub>	S <sub>0,0,2</sub> = S <sub>192</sub>	S <sub>1,0,2</sub> = S <sub>193</sub>		S <sub>95,0,2</sub> = S <sub>287</sub>		$S_{0,0,n-1} = S_{96(n-1)}$	S <sub>1,0,n-1</sub> = S <sub>96(n-1)+1</sub>		S <sub>95,0,n-1</sub> = S <sub>96n-1</sub>

#### Arrangement of symbols before interleaving

<	Data segment No. 0					jme 1	<sup>∙nt</sup> →	← Data segment No. 2 →					Contemporation Data segment No. n-1				
S <sub>0</sub>	Sn		$S_{\rm 95n}$	S <sub>1</sub>	S <sub>n+1</sub>		S <sub>95n+1</sub>	S <sub>2</sub>	S <sub>n+2</sub>		S <sub>95n+2</sub>		S <sub>n-1</sub>	S <sub>2n-1</sub>		S <sub>96n-1</sub>	

Arrangement of symbols after interleaving

#### Fig. 3-26 (a): Inter-segment Interleaving in Mode 1

<	Data seg No. (	ime 0	<sup>nt</sup> →	<	Data seg No.	jme 1	<sup>ent</sup> →	← Data segment No. 2 →					← Data se No.			gment →	
S <sub>0,0,0</sub> = S <sub>0</sub>	S <sub>1,0,0</sub> = S <sub>1</sub>		S <sub>191,0,0</sub> = S <sub>191</sub>	S <sub>0,0,1</sub> = S <sub>192</sub>	S <sub>1,0,1</sub> = S <sub>193</sub>		S <sub>191,0,1</sub> = S <sub>383</sub>	S <sub>0,0,2</sub> = S <sub>384</sub>	S <sub>1,0,2</sub> = S <sub>385</sub>		S <sub>191,0,2</sub> = S <sub>575</sub>		$S_{0,0,n-1} = S_{192(n-1)}$	$= S_{1,0,n-1} \\ = S_{192(n-1)+1}$		S <sub>191,0,n-1</sub> = S <sub>192n-1</sub>	

#### Arrangement of symbols before interleaving

<	Data segme No. 0	ent →	<u> </u>	Data seg No.	ime 1	<sup>nt</sup> →	← Data segment No. 2 →					Contemporaries Data segme No. n-1			<sup>it</sup> >
S <sub>0</sub>	S <sub>n</sub>	S <sub>191n</sub>	S <sub>1</sub>	S <sub>n+1</sub>		S <sub>191n+1</sub>	S <sub>2</sub>	S <sub>n+2</sub>		S <sub>191n+2</sub>		S <sub>n-1</sub>	S <sub>2n-1</sub>		S <sub>192n-1</sub>

Arrangement of symbols after interleaving

Fig. 3-26 (b): Inter-segment Interleaving in Mode 2

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 5)

ł	←	Data seg No.	jme 0	ent →	<	Data seg No.	ime 1	ent →	← Data segment No. 2 →					<	mer 1	<sup>nt</sup> >	
	S <sub>0,0,0</sub> = S <sub>0</sub>	S <sub>1,0,0</sub> = S <sub>1</sub>		S <sub>383,0,0</sub> = S <sub>383</sub>	S <sub>0,0,1</sub> = S <sub>384</sub>	S <sub>1,0,1</sub> = S <sub>385</sub>		S <sub>383,0,1</sub> = S <sub>767</sub>	S <sub>0,0,2</sub> = S <sub>768</sub>	S <sub>1,0,2</sub> = S <sub>769</sub>		S <sub>383,0,2</sub> = S <sub>1151</sub>		$S_{0,0,n-1} = S_{384(n-1)}$	S <sub>1,0,n-1</sub> = S <sub>384 n-1)+1</sub>		S <sub>383,0,n-1</sub> = S <sub>384n-1</sub>

#### Arrangement of symbols before interleaving

<	Data seg No. (	<	Data seg No.	jme 1	ent →	← Data segment No. 2					<	gmen 1-1	<sup>it</sup> >			
S <sub>0</sub>	S <sub>n</sub>		S <sub>383n</sub>	S <sub>1</sub>	S <sub>n+1</sub>		• S <sub>383n+1</sub>	S <sub>2</sub>	S <sub>n+2</sub>		S <sub>383n+2</sub>		S <sub>n-1</sub>	S <sub>2n-1</sub>		S <sub>384n-1</sub>

#### Arrangement of symbols after interleaving

### Fig. 3-26 (c): Inter-segment Interleaving in Mode 3

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 5)

### 3.11.2.2 Intra-segment interleaving

Intra-segment interleaving must be conducted in two steps: carrier rotation by segment number, followed by carrier randomizing.

In the carrier rotation, carrier changes are carried out as shown in Figs. 3-27 (a), 3-27 (b), and 3-27 (c). Here, S'<sub>i,j,k</sub> represents the carrier symbol of the kth segment following inter-segment interleaving.

S' <sub>0,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>1,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>2,0,k</sub>	•••	S' <sub>95,0,k</sub>
		$\downarrow$		
S'(k mod 96),0,k	S'(k + 1 mod 96),0,k	S'(k + 2 mod 96),0,k	•••	S'(k + 95 mod 96),0,k

Fig. 3-27 (a): Carrier Rotation in Mode 1

S' <sub>0,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>1,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>2,0,k</sub>	•••	S' <sub>191,0,k</sub>
		$\downarrow$		
S' <sub>(k mod 192),0,k</sub>	S' <sub>(k + 1 mod 192),0,k</sub>	S' <sub>(k + 2 mod 192),0,k</sub>		S'(k + 191 mod 192),0,k

Fig. 3-27 (b): Carrier Rotation in Mode 2

S' <sub>0,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>1,0,k</sub>	S' <sub>2,0,k</sub>	 S' <sub>383,0,k</sub>
		$\downarrow$	
S'(k mod 384),0,k	S'(k + 1 mod 384),0,k	S'(k + 2 mod 384),0,k	 S'(k + 383 mod 384),0,k

Fig. 3-27 (c): Carrier Rotation in Mode 3

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 6)

Next, carrier randomizing in Mode 1, 2, and 3 is shown in Table 3-13 (a), (b), and (c), respectively.

These tables show which carriers are assigned, as a result of carrier randomizing, to carrier-rotated data arranged in ascending order of carrier number.

							• •			-							-							
Before	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
After	80	93	63	92	94	55	17	81	6	51	9	85	89	65	52	15	73	66	46	71	12	70	18	13
Before	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
After	95	34	1	38	78	59	91	64	0	28	11	4	45	35	16	7	48	22	23	77	56	19	8	36
Before	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71
After	39	61	21	3	26	69	67	20	74	86	72	25	31	5	49	42	54	87	43	60	29	2	76	84
-		-						-								-	-	-	-		-	-		-
Before	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
After	83	40	14	79	27	57	44	37	30	68	47	88	75	41	90	10	33	32	62	50	58	82	53	24

Table 3-13 (a): Intra-Segment Carrier Randomizing in Mode 1

Before	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
After	98	35	67	116	135	17	5	93	73	168	54	143	43	74	165	48	37	69	154	150	107	76	176	79
Before	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
After	175	36	28	78	47	128	94	163	184	72	142	2	86	14	130	151	114	68	46	183	122	112	180	42
				•																				
Before	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71
After	105	97	33	134	177	84	170	45	187	38	167	10	189	51	117	156	161	25	89	125	139	24	19	57
F			•			•					•	•				•		•	•					
Before	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
After	71	39	77	191	88	85	0	162	181	113	140	61	75	82	101	174	118	20	136	3	121	190	120	92
Before	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119
After	160	52	153	127	65	60	133	147	131	87	22	58	100	111	141	83	49	132	12	155	146	102	164	66
Before	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143
After	1	62	178	15	182	96	80	119	23	6	166	56	99	123	138	137	21	145	185	18	70	129	95	90
Before	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167
After	149	109	124	50	11	152	4	31	172	40	13	32	55	159	41	8	7	144	16	26	173	81	44	103
		•		•	•				•	•			•	•	•		•							
Before	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191
After	64	9	30	157	126	179	148	63	188	171	106	104	158	115	34	186	29	108	53	91	169	110	27	59
								,																

Table 3-13 (b): Intra-Segment Carrier Randomizing in Mode 2

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 7)

							. ,			-							•							
Before	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
After	62	13	371	11	285	336	365	220	226	92	56	46	120	175	298	352	172	235	53	164	368	187	125	82
Before	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
After	5	45	173	258	135	182	141	273	126	264	286	88	233	61	249	367	310	179	155	57	123	208	14	227
Before	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71
After	100	311	205	79	184	185	328	77	115	277	112	20	199	178	143	152	215	204	139	234	358	192	309	183
		_														_								
Before	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
After	81	129	256	314	101	43	97	324	142	157	90	214	102	29	303	363	261	31	22	52	305	301	293	177
111001	01	120	200	011	101	10	0.		1.2	101	00		102	20	000	000	201	01			000	001	200	1
Before	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119
Aftor	116	296	85	196	100	114	58	108	16	167	145	110	245	113	295	103	939	17	108	283	246	64	237	189
11101	110	200	00	100	101	11-1	00	100	10	101	140	110	240	110	200	100	101	11	100	200	240	04	201	100
Before	120	191	199	192	194	195	196	197	198	190	130	131	139	133	134	135	136	137	138	130	140	141	149	142
After	199	979	202	220	124	225	256	20	247	251	79	159	976	949	104	100	100	101	100	159	215	117	144	919
After	128	ə13	90Z	ə20	239	ə <i>ə</i> ə	996	-99	ə47	166	13	199	270	243	99	99	201	3	ə30	199	616	117	269	413
Defen	144	145	140	1.47	140	140	150	151	159	159	154	155	150	157	150	150	1.00	1.01	109	169	164	105	100	167
Defore	144	140	146	147	148	149	100	101	152	103	104	100	100	107	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167
Anter	210	149	383	331	339	191	241	321	217	30	334	161	322	49	176	399	12	346	60	28	229	269	288	229
D 4	100	4.00	450		450	450			450		450	4.50	100		100	100	101	4.0.5	100	40-	100	100	400	101
Before	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191
After	382	59	181	170	319	341	86	251	133	344	361	109	44	369	268	257	323	55	317	381	121	360	260	275
D 4	100	100	101	107	100	10-	100	100	200	201	202	200	224	20.5	222		222	200			212	21.2	24.4	
Before	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215
After	190	19	63	18	248	9	240	211	150	230	332	231	71	255	350	355	83	87	154	218	138	269	348	130
			1	i	i	1	-		1	-		1	-		1				1	1				-
Before	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239
After	160	278	377	216	236	308	223	254	25	98	300	201	137	219	36	325	124	66	353	169	21	35	107	50
		i	i —	i —	i —	i —			i —			i —			i —				i —	i —				-
Before	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251	252	253	254	255	256	257	258	259	260	261	262	263
After	106	333	326	262	252	271	263	372	136	0	366	206	159	122	188	6	284	96	26	200	197	186	345	340
	r —	r —		1	1											r —								
Before	264	265	266	267	268	269	270	271	272	273	274	275	276	277	278	279	280	281	282	283	284	285	286	287
After	349	103	84	228	212	2	67	318	1	74	342	166	194	33	68	267	111	118	140	195	105	202	291	259
	1	1	1	1	1	1			1		1	1			1	1			1	1		1		
Before	288	289	290	291	292	293	294	295	296	297	298	299	300	301	302	303	304	305	306	307	308	309	310	311
After	23	171	65	281	24	165	8	94	222	331	34	238	364	376	266	89	80	253	163	280	247	4	362	379
	·	·	i	i	i	i			i			i			i	·			i	i				
Before	312	313	314	315	316	317	318	319	320	321	322	323	324	325	326	327	328	329	330	331	332	333	334	335
After	290	279	54	78	180	72	316	282	131	207	343	370	306	221	132	7	148	299	168	224	48	47	357	313
			1	1	1	1			1			1			1				1	1				
Before	336	337	338	339	340	341	342	343	344	345	346	347	348	349	350	351	352	353	354	355	356	357	358	359
After	75	104	70	147	40	110	374	69	146	37	375	354	174	41	32	304	307	312	15	272	134	242	203	209
Before	360	361	362	363	364	365	366	367	368	369	370	371	372	373	374	375	376	377	378	379	380	381	382	383
After	380	162	297	327	10	93	42	250	156	338	292	144	378	294	329	127	270	76	95	91	244	274	27	51
								1																

Table 3-13 (c): Ir	ntra-Segment Ca	arrier Randomizin	a in Mode 3

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 7)

[Description]

Carrier rotation and carrier randomizing are intended to eliminate periodicity in carrier arrangement. These operations make it possible to prevent burst errors of a specific segment's carrier, which may occur if the carrier arrangement period matches the frequency-selective fading after inter-segment interleaving.

Figs. 3-28 (a) and (b) show examples of carrier randomizing in Mode 1 and carrier randomizing including time interleaving, respectively.



Fig. 3-28 (a): Example of Carrier Arrangement before and after Carrier Randomizing



Fig. 3-28 (b): Example of Carrier Arrangement after Time Interleaving and Carrier Randomizing

# 3.12 Frame structure

All data-processing tasks in data segments required for channel coding are complete when the steps discussed up to Section 3.11 are performed. This section stipulates OFDM-frame structure achieved through the addition of various pilot signals to data segments.

#### 3.12.1 OFDM-segment configuration for the differential modulation

Fig. 3-29 shows the OFDM-segment configuration for a differential modulation (DQPSK) (Mode 1).



Fig. 3-29: OFDM-Segment Configuration for the Differential Modulation

(Ordinance Annexed Table 7, Item 1)

Note, however, that  $S_{i,j}$  represents carrier symbols within data segments following interleaving.

Note also that the CP (Continual Pilot), the TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control), and the AC (Auxiliary Channel) are the continuous carrier, the signal for conveying control information, and the extension signal for conveying additional information on broadcasting, respectively.

In Mode 1, carrier numbers 0 to 107 are available, while in Modes 2 and 3, carrier numbers 0 to 215 and 0 to 431 are assigned, respectively.

The arrangement of various control signals (represented by carrier numbers) that are added by the OFDM-frame structure section in each mode is shown in Tables 3-14 (a), (b), and (c).

			1										
Segment No.	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
CP	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
AC1_1	10	53	61	11	20	74	35	76	4	40	8	7	98
AC1_2	28	83	100	101	40	100	79	97	89	89	64	89	101
AC2_1	3	3	29	28	23	30	3	5	13	72	36	25	10
AC2_2	45	15	41	45	63	81	72	18	93	95	48	30	30
AC2_3	59	40	84	81	85	92	85	57	98	100	52	42	55
AC2_4	77	58	93	91	105	103	89	92	102	105	74	104	81
TMCC 1	13	25	4	36	10	7	49	31	16	5	78	34	23
TMCC 2	50	63	7	48	28	25	61	39	30	10	82	48	37
TMCC 3	70	73	17	55	44	47	96	47	37	21	85	54	51
TMCC 4	83	80	51	59	47	60	99	65	$\overline{74}$	44	98	70	68
TMCC 5	87	93	71	86	54	87	104	72	83	61	102	101	105

Table 3-14: Arrangement of the CP, TMCC, and AC Carriers for the Differential Modulation (a) Arrangement of the CP, AC, and TMCC Carriers in Mode 1

Segment numbers are arranged in ascending order of frequency along the frequency axis (see Section 3.14).

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 1)

Segment No.	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
СР	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
AC1_1	10	61	20	35	4	8	98	53	11	74	76	40	7
AC1_2	28	100	40	79	89	64	101	83	101	100	97	89	89
AC1_3	161	119	182	184	148	115	118	169	128	143	112	116	206
AC1_4	191	209	208	205	197	197	136	208	148	187	197	172	209
AC2_1	3	29	23	3	13	36	10	3	28	30	5	72	25
AC2_2	45	41	63	72	93	48	30	15	45	81	18	95	30
AC2_3	59	84	85	85	98	52	55	40	81	92	57	100	42
$AC2_4$	77	93	105	89	102	74	81	58	91	103	92	105	104
$AC2_5$	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108
AC2_6	111	136	138	113	180	133	111	137	131	111	121	144	118
AC2_7	123	153	189	126	203	138	153	149	171	180	201	156	138
AC2_8	148	189	200	165	208	150	167	192	193	193	206	160	163
AC2_9	166	199	211	200	213	212	185	201	213	197	210	182	189
TMCC 1	13	4	10	49	16	78	23	25	36	7	31	5	34
TMCC 2	50	7	28	61	30	82	37	63	48	25	39	10	48
TMCC 3	70	17	44	96	37	85	51	73	55	47	47	21	54
TMCC 4	83	51	47	99	74	98	68	80	59	60	65	44	70
TMCC 5	87	71	54	104	83	102	105	93	86	87	72	61	101
TMCC 6	133	144	115	139	113	142	121	112	118	157	124	186	131
TMCC 7	171	156	133	147	118	156	158	115	136	169	138	190	145
TMCC 8	181	163	155	155	129	162	178	125	152	204	145	193	159
TMCC 9	188	167	168	173	152	178	191	159	155	207	182	206	176
TMCC 10	201	194	195	180	169	209	195	179	162	212	191	210	213

(b) Arrangement of the CP, AC, and TMCC Carriers in Mode 2

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 2)

CP         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O         O	Segment No	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
ACL         10         20         4         48         11         76         6         6         6         6         6         6         7         61         35         8         53         74         40           ACL_2         28         40         89         101         101         97         89         100         79         64         83         10         89           ACL_4         161         182         118         118         122         120         119         184         115         160         43         116           ACL_6         161         285         280         290         200         205         197         208         187         117         313         305           ACL_1         314         414         430         388         407         424         433         32         364         334         344         328         422           ACL_2         425         435         33         30         455         18         30         41         72         48         55         40         30         30         42         40         AC2         418         108         <	CP	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
AC1_2       128       40       89       101       101       97       61       35       8       30       83       100       89         AC1_2       181       182       148       118       128       112       206       100       191       208       187       172         AC1_5       277       251       224       260       200       206       200       206       107       208       134       122       222         AC1_6       316       295       280       290       316       305       323       33       343       313       305         AC1_8       425       421       413       424       403       388       407       424       413       352       364       314       324       425         AC2_1       3       23       13       10       28       5       25       29       3       36       3       30       72         AC2_5       185       98       55       81       57       42       84       85       52       40       92       100         AC2_4       77       105       102       81       91 <td></td> <td>10</td> <td>20</td> <td>4</td> <td>08</td> <td>11</td> <td>76</td> <td>7</td> <td>61</td> <td>25</td> <td>8</td> <td>52</td> <td>74</td> <td>40</td>		10	20	4	08	11	76	7	61	25	8	52	74	40
ACL_3       161       182       112       112       112       113       113       114       116       164       115       164       115       164       115       164       116         ACL_3       127       251       224       260       202       203       203       134       117       166       143       116         ACL_6       316       255       280       299       316       305       244       256       305       317       313       305         ACL_7       335       400       331       385       359       332       377       398       364       334       344       328       422         AC2_1       3       23       13       100       28       5       25       29       3       36       30       72         AC2_1       45       63       93       30       45       18       30       41       72       48       85       24       40       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       103       104       404       40 <t< td=""><td>AC1_1</td><td>28</td><td>40</td><td>-4 89</td><td>101</td><td>101</td><td>97</td><td>89</td><td>100</td><td>79</td><td>64</td><td>83</td><td>100</td><td>40 89</td></t<>	AC1_1	28	40	-4 89	101	101	97	89	100	79	64	83	100	40 89
$ \begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC1_3	161	182	148	118	128	112	206	119	184	115	169	143	116
ACL_5       277       251       224       269       266       226       226       226       231       232       232         ACL_6       316       205       280       299       316       305       244       256       200       231       317       313       305         ACL_7       335       400       331       385       359       332       377       398       364       334       344       322       422         ACL_8       426       421       413       424       403       388       407       424       413       352       364       33       30       72         AC2_1       3       55       85       98       55       81       57       42       48       85       24       40       92       100         AC2_6       118       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108 <td>AC1_4</td> <td>191</td> <td>208</td> <td>197</td> <td>136</td> <td>148</td> <td>197</td> <td>209</td> <td>209</td> <td>205</td> <td>197</td> <td>208</td> <td>140</td> <td>172</td>	AC1_4	191	208	197	136	148	197	209	209	205	197	208	140	172
AC1_6         316         295         280         299         316         305         244         256         305         317         313         305           AC1_7         335         400         331         385         359         332         377         398         364         334         344         328         422           AC2_1         3         23         13         10         28         5         25         29         3         63         30         07         22           AC2_2         45         63         93         30         45         18         30         411         72         48         15         81         95           AC2_4         77         105         102         81         91         92         104         38         74         58         103         105           AC2_5         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         103         103 <t< td=""><td>AC1 5</td><td>277</td><td>251</td><td>224</td><td>269</td><td>290</td><td>256</td><td>226</td><td>236</td><td>220</td><td>314</td><td>227</td><td>292</td><td>223</td></t<>	AC1 5	277	251	224	269	290	256	226	236	220	314	227	292	223
$ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	AC1_6	316	295	280	299	316	305	244	256	305	317	317	313	305
AC1_8       425       421       413       424       403       388       407       424       413       352       364       413       425         AC2_1       3       23       13       10       28       5       25       29       3       366       3       300       72         AC2_2       45       63       93       30       45       18       30       41       72       48       55       24       09       200         AC2_3       59       85       85       85       57       42       84       85       52       40       92       100         AC2_6       110       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108       108	AC1 7	335	400	331	385	359	332	377	398	364	334	344	328	422
AC2_1         3         23         13         10         28         5         25         29         3         36         3         30         72           AC2_2         45         63         93         30         45         18         30         41         72         48         15         81         95           AC2_3         59         85         98         55         81         57         42         84         85         52         40         92         104           AC2_4         77         105         102         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108         108 </td <td>AC1 8</td> <td>425</td> <td>421</td> <td>413</td> <td>424</td> <td>403</td> <td>388</td> <td>407</td> <td>424</td> <td>413</td> <td>352</td> <td>364</td> <td>413</td> <td>425</td>	AC1 8	425	421	413	424	403	388	407	424	413	352	364	413	425
$ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	 AC2_1	3	23	13	10	28	5	25	29	3	36	3	30	72
$ \begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2 2	45	63	93	30	45	18	30	41	72	48	15	81	95
$ \begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2 3	59	85	98	55	81	57	42	84	85	52	40	92	100
$ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	AC24	77	105	102	81	91	92	104	93	89	74	58	103	105
$ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	AC2_5	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108	108
$ \begin{array}{c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c $	AC2_6	111	138	180	111	131	121	118	136	113	133	137	111	144
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2_7	123	189	203	153	171	201	138	153	126	138	149	180	156
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2_8	148	200	208	167	193	206	163	189	165	150	192	193	160
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2_9	166	211	213	185	213	210	189	199	200	212	201	197	182
$\begin{array}{ c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c c$	AC2_10	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216	216
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	AC2_11	245	219	252	219	246	288	219	239	229	226	244	221	241
AC2_13300301268256308316275301314271297273258AC2_14309305290274319321293321318297307308320AC2_15324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324AC2_16352329349353327360377354366309372339405419369387417334AC2_18405381366408409376364416424383409422379AC2_19415416428417413398382427429401429426405TMCC1131016233631344449782575TMC25028303748394876182632510TMCC370443751554754179685734721TMCC483477468596570519998806044TMCC5875483105867210171104102938761 <td< td=""><td>AC2_12</td><td>257</td><td>288</td><td>264</td><td>231</td><td>297</td><td>311</td><td>261</td><td>279</td><td>309</td><td>246</td><td>261</td><td>234</td><td>246</td></td<>	AC2_12	257	288	264	231	297	311	261	279	309	246	261	234	246
AC2_14309305290274319321293321318297307308320AC2_15324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324 <t< td=""><td>AC2_13</td><td>300</td><td>301</td><td>268</td><td>256</td><td>308</td><td>316</td><td>275</td><td>301</td><td>314</td><td>271</td><td>297</td><td>273</td><td>258</td></t<>	AC2_13	300	301	268	256	308	316	275	301	314	271	297	273	258
AC2_15324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324324AC2_17369342381366396372339405416424433409422470429426425405TMCC1131016233631313444497825755TMCC3704437554754179685734721TMCC483477468596570519998806044TMCC5<	AC2_14	309	305	290	274	319	321	293	321	318	297	307	308	320
AC2_16352329349353327360327354396327347337334AC2_17369342354365396372339405419369387417354AC2_18405381366408409376364416424383409422379AC2_19415416428417413398382427429401429426405TMCC113101623363134449782575TMCC25028303748394876182632510TMCC370443751554754179685734721TMCC483477468596570519998806044TMC5875483105867210171104102938761TMCC6133115113121118124131144139142112157186TMC7171133118152145159163155162125204193TMC618115512917815214515916315516215	AC2_15	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324	324
AC2_17369 $342$ $354$ $365$ $396$ $372$ $339$ $405$ $419$ $369$ $387$ $417$ $354$ AC2_18405 $381$ $366$ $408$ $409$ $376$ $364$ $416$ $424$ $383$ $409$ $422$ $379$ AC2_19415 $416$ $428$ $417$ $413$ $398$ $382$ $427$ $429$ $401$ $429$ $426$ $405$ TMCC1131016 $23$ $36$ $31$ $34$ $4$ $49$ $78$ $25$ $7$ $5$ TMCC2 $50$ $28$ $30$ $37$ $48$ $39$ $48$ $7$ $61$ $82$ $63$ $25$ $10$ TMCC3 $70$ $44$ $37$ $51$ $55$ $47$ $54$ $17$ $96$ $85$ $73$ $47$ $21$ TMCC4 $83$ $47$ $74$ $68$ $59$ $65$ $70$ $51$ $99$ $98$ $80$ $60$ $44$ TMC5 $87$ $54$ $83$ $105$ $86$ $72$ $101$ $71$ $104$ $102$ $93$ $87$ $61$ TMC6 $133$ $115$ $113$ $121$ $118$ $135$ $156$ $147$ $156$ $115$ $169$ $190$ TMC7 $171$ $133$ $115$ $152$ $145$ $159$ $163$ $155$ $162$ $125$ $204$ $193$ TMC6 $138$ $168$ $152$ $191$ $155$	AC2_16	352	329	349	353	327	360	327	354	396	327	347	337	334
AC2_18405381366408409376364416424383409422379AC2_19415416428417413398382427429401429426405TMCC113101623363134449782575TMC25028303748394876182632510TMCC370443751554754179685734721TMCC483477468596570519998806044TMC5875483105867210171104102938761TMCC6133115113121118124131144139142112157186TMC7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMC7 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMC7 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMC7 10201195169195162191213194180	AC2_17	369	342	354	365	396	372	339	405	419	369	387	417	354
AC2_19415416428417413398382427429401429426405TMCC 113101623363134449782575TMCC 25028303748394876182632510TMCC 370443751554754179685734721TMCC 483477468596570519998806044TMCC 5875483105867210171104102938761TMCC 6133115113121118124131144139142112157186TMCC 7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11202265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244	AC2_18	405	381	366	408	409	376	364	416	424	383	409	422	379
TMCC 1       13       10       16       23       36       31       34       4       49       78       25       7       5         TMCC 2       50       28       30       37       48       39       48       7       61       82       63       25       10         TMCC 3       70       44       37       51       55       47       54       17       96       85       73       47       21         TMCC 4       83       47       74       68       59       65       70       51       99       98       80       60       44         TMCC 5       87       54       83       105       86       72       101       71       104       102       93       87       61         TMCC 6       133       115       113       121       118       124       131       144       139       142       112       157       186         TMC 7       171       133       118       158       136       145       156       147       156       115       169       190       195       162       191       133       148       159	AC2_19	415	416	428	417	413	398	382	427	429	401	429	426	405
TMCC 2       50       28       30       37       48       39       48       7       61       82       63       25       10         TMCC 3       70       44       37       51       55       47       54       17       96       85       73       47       21         TMCC 4       83       47       74       68       59       65       70       51       99       98       80       60       44         TMCC 5       87       54       83       105       86       72       101       71       104       102       93       87       61         TMCC 6       133       115       113       121       118       124       131       144       139       142       112       157       186         TMCC 7       171       133       118       152       145       159       163       155       162       191       201       155       204       193         TMCC 8       181       155       129       176       167       173       178       159       207       206         TMCC 10       201       195       169       195 <td>TMCC 1</td> <td>13</td> <td>10</td> <td>16</td> <td>23</td> <td>36</td> <td>31</td> <td>34</td> <td>4</td> <td>49</td> <td>78</td> <td>25</td> <td>7</td> <td>5</td>	TMCC 1	13	10	16	23	36	31	34	4	49	78	25	7	5
TMCC 3       70       44       37       51       55       47       54       17       96       85       73       47       21         TMCC 4       83       47       74       68       59       65       70       51       99       98       80       60       44         TMCC 5       87       54       83       105       86       72       101       71       104       102       93       87       61         TMCC 6       133       115       113       121       118       124       131       144       139       142       112       157       186         TMCC 7       171       133       118       158       136       138       145       156       147       156       115       169       190         TMCC 8       181       155       129       178       155       182       176       167       173       178       159       204       193         TMCC 10       201       195       169       195       162       191       213       194       180       209       179       212       210         TMCC 10       201	TMCC 2	50	28	30	37	48	39	48	7	61	82	63	25	10
TMCC 483477468596570519998806044TMCC 5875483105867210171104102938761TMCC 6133115113121118124131144139142112157186TMCC 7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 16360355358328373	TMCC 3	70	44	37	51	55	47	54	17	96	85	73	47	21
TMCC 5875483105867210171104102938761TMCC 6133115113121118124131144139142112157186TMCC 7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299331322354361TMCC 163603553583	TMCC 4	83	47	74	68	59	65	70	51	99	98	80	60	44
TMCC 6133115113121118124131144139142112115186TMCC 7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 16360355358328373402349331329337334340347TMCC 17372363372	TMCC 5	87	54	83	105	86	72	101	71	104	102	93	87	61
TMCC 7171133118158136138145156147156115169190TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 17372363372331385406387349334374352354361TMCC 18379371378341420409397371345394368361375TMCC 1938338939	TMCC 6	133	115	113	121	118	124	131	144	139	142	112	157	186
TMCC 8181155129178152145159163155162125204193TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 16360355358328373402349331329337334340347TMCC 18379371378341420409397371345394368361375TMCC 19383389394375423422404384368407371398392TMCC 193833893	TMCC 7	171	133	118	158	136	138	145	156	147	156	115	169	190
TMCC 9188168152191155182176167173178159207206TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 16360355358328373402349331329337334340347TMCC 17372363372331385406387349334374352354361TMCC 19383389394375423422404384368407371398392TMCC 19383389394375423426417411385411378407429	TMCC 8	181	155	129	178	152	145	159	163	155	162	125	204	193
TMCC 10201195169195162191213194180209179212210TMCC 11220265294241223221229226232239252247250TMCC 12223277298279241226266244246253264255264TMCC 13233312301289263237286260253267271263270TMCC 14267315314296276260299263290284275281286TMCC 15287320318309303277303270299321302288317TMCC 16360355358328373402349331329337334340347TMCC 17372363372331385406387349334374352354361TMCC 18379371378341420409397371345394368361375TMCC 19383389394375423422404384368407371398392TMCC 20410396425395428426417411385411378407429	TMCC 9	188	168	152	191	155	182	176	167	173	178	159	207	206
TMCC 11       220       265       294       241       223       221       229       226       232       239       252       247       250         TMCC 12       223       277       298       279       241       226       266       244       246       253       264       255       264         TMCC 12       233       312       301       289       263       237       286       260       253       267       271       263       270         TMCC 13       233       312       301       289       263       237       286       260       253       267       271       263       270         TMCC 14       267       315       314       296       276       260       299       263       290       284       275       281       286         TMCC 15       287       320       318       309       303       277       303       270       299       321       302       288       317         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347	TMCC 10	201	195	169	195	162	191	213	194	180	209	179	212	210
IMEC 12       223       277       298       279       241       226       266       244       246       253       264       255       264         TMCC 13       233       312       301       289       263       237       286       260       253       267       271       263       270         TMCC 14       267       315       314       296       276       260       299       263       290       284       275       281       286         TMCC 15       287       320       318       309       303       277       303       270       299       321       302       288       317         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       344       340       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       361		220	265	294	241	223	221	229	226	232	239	252	247	250
TMCC 13       233       312       301       289       263       237       286       260       253       267       271       263       270         TMCC 14       267       315       314       296       276       260       299       263       290       284       275       281       286         TMCC 15       287       320       318       309       303       277       303       270       299       321       302       288       317         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       361         TMCC 18       379       371       378       341       420       409       397       371       345       394       368       361       375	TMCC 12	223	277	298	279	241	226	266	244	246	253	264	255	264
IMICC 14       267       315       314       296       276       260       299       263       290       284       275       281       286         TMCC 15       287       320       318       309       303       277       303       270       299       321       302       288       317         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       361         TMCC 18       379       371       378       341       420       409       397       371       345       394       368       361       375         TMCC 19       383       389       394       375       423       422       404       384       368       407       371       398       392         TMCC 20       410       396       425       395       428       426       417       411       385       411       378       407       429	TMCC 13	233	31Z 91#	301	289	263	237	286	260	253	267	271	263	270
TMCC 15       287       320       318       309       303       217       303       210       299       321       302       288       317         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 16       360       355       358       328       373       402       349       331       329       337       334       340       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       361         TMCC 18       379       371       378       341       420       409       397       371       345       394       368       361       375         TMCC 19       383       389       394       375       423       422       404       384       368       407       371       398       392         TMCC 20       410       396       425       395       428       426       417       411       385       411       378       407       429	TMCC 14	267	315	314	296	276	260	299	263	290	284	275	281	286
IMPCC 10       360       550       526       575       402       549       531       529       537       534       340       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       364       347         TMCC 17       372       363       372       331       385       406       387       349       334       374       352       354       361         TMCC 18       379       371       378       341       420       409       397       371       345       394       368       361       375         TMCC 19       383       389       394       375       423       422       404       384       368       407       371       398       392         TMCC 20       410       396       425       395       428       426       417       411       385       411       378       407       429	TMCC 16	267	320 955	318 950	309 200	303 979	217	3U3 240	270	299	321 997	302 224	288	317
IMCC 11       312       353       312       331       333       400       367       349       354       374       352       354       361         TMCC 18       379       371       378       341       420       409       397       371       345       394       368       361       375         TMCC 19       383       389       394       375       423       422       404       384       368       407       371       398       392         TMCC 20       410       396       425       395       428       426       417       411       385       411       378       407       429	TMCC 16	300 379	363	200 279	04ð 991	395 395	402	049 997	240 240	029 994	331 374	004 959	940 954	047 961
TMCC 10         375         371         373         371         373         371         343         354         368         361         373           TMCC 19         383         389         394         375         423         422         404         384         368         407         371         398         392           TMCC 20         410         396         425         395         428         426         417         411         385         411         378         407         429	TMCC 18	370	909 971	370	001 9/1	490	400	307	949 971	945 945	304	369	261	275
TMCC 10         305         505         505         515         425         425         404         504         505         407         511         538         532           TMCC 20         410         396         425         395         428         426         417         411         385         411         378         407         429	TMCC 19	383	389	394	375	420	409	404	384	368	407	371	308	309
	TMCC 20	410	396	425	395	428	426	417	411	385	411	378	407	429

(c) Arrangement of the CP, AC, and TMCC Carriers in Mode 3

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 3)

The CP of a differential modulation's segment serves as the SP of a coherent modulation's segment when the differential modulation's segment at the lowermost frequency is adjacent to one of the coherent modulation's segments. The CP is thus provided at this low-frequency end. The receiver uses this CP as the high-frequency end SP for coherent detection in the coherent modulation's segment.

The TMCC and AC (AC1, AC2) carriers are arranged randomly with respect to the frequency in order to reduce the degradation caused by periodic dips on channel characteristics under multi-path environment.

Note that AC1 carriers for the differential modulation's segments are arranged at the same positions as those for the coherent modulation's segments.

### 3.12.2 OFDM-segment configuration for the coherent modulation

Fig. 3-30 shows an example of OFDM-segment configuration for a coherent modulation (QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM) in Mode 1.  $S_{i,j}$  represents carrier symbols within data segments following interleaving.



Fig. 3-30: OFDM-Segment Configuration for the Coherent Modulation

(Ordinance Annexed Table 7, Item 2)

The SP (Scattered Pilot) is inserted into a segment once every 12 carriers in the carrier direction, and once every 4 symbols in the symbol direction, as shown in the figure. Table 3-15 shows the AC and TMCC carrier arrangements.

The AC1 carrier arrangement for the coherent modulation is the same as that for the differential modulation. Note that AC2 is available only for the differential modulation. Therefore, the coherent modulation does not have any AC2.

Table 3	15. 10	' and -	TMCC	Carrior	Arrana	omonte	for the	Cohoront	modulat	tion
I able 3	-15. AC	, anu		Camer	Anany	ements		Conerent	mouula	lion

		• •					•						
Segment No.	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
AC1_1	10	53	61	11	20	74	35	76	4	40	8	7	98
$AC1_2$	28	83	100	101	40	100	79	97	89	89	64	89	101
TMCC 1	70	25	17	86	44	47	49	31	83	61	85	101	23

(a) AC and TMCC Carrier Arrangements in Mode 1

Segment No.	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
AC1_1	10	61	20	35	4	8	98	53	11	74	76	40	7
$AC1_2$	28	100	40	79	89	64	101	83	101	100	97	89	89
AC1_3	161	119	182	184	148	115	118	169	128	143	112	116	206
AC1_4	191	209	208	205	197	197	136	208	148	187	197	172	209
TMCC 1	70	17	44	49	83	85	23	25	86	47	31	61	101
TMCC 2	133	194	155	139	169	209	178	125	152	157	191	193	131

(b) AC and TMCC Carrier Arrangements in Mode 2

(c) AC and	TMCC Carrier	Arrangements	in Mode 3
------------	--------------	--------------	-----------

Segment No.	11	9	7	5	3	1	0	2	4	6	8	10	12
AC1_1	10	20	4	98	11	76	7	61	35	8	53	74	40
AC1_2	28	40	89	101	101	97	89	100	79	64	83	100	89
AC1_3	161	182	148	118	128	112	206	119	184	115	169	143	116
AC1_4	191	208	197	136	148	197	209	209	205	197	208	187	172
AC1_ 5	277	251	224	269	290	256	226	236	220	314	227	292	223
AC1_6	316	295	280	299	316	305	244	256	305	317	317	313	305
AC1_7	335	400	331	385	359	332	377	398	364	334	344	328	422
AC1_8	425	421	413	424	403	388	407	424	413	352	364	413	425
TMCC 1	70	44	83	23	86	31	101	17	49	85	25	47	61
TMCC 2	133	155	169	178	152	191	131	194	139	209	125	157	193
TMCC 3	233	265	301	241	263	277	286	260	299	239	302	247	317
TMCC 4	410	355	425	341	373	409	349	371	385	394	368	407	347

(Notification No. 303, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 4, 5, and 6)

The TMCC and AC (AC1) carriers are arranged randomly with respect to the frequency direction in order to reduce the periodic impact of dip on channel characteristics caused by multipath. Note that AC1 carriers for the differential modulation's segments are arranged at the same positions as those for the coherent modulation's segments.

### 3.13 Pilot signals

#### 3.13.1 Scattered pilot (SP)

Scattered pilot is a BPSK signal that correlates output bit sequence  $W_i$  of the PRBS-generating circuit shown in Fig. 3-31, where the i of  $W_i$  is corresponds to the carrier number i of OFDM-segment. The initial value of the PRBS-generating circuit is defined for each segment.

The initial values are shown in Table 3-16, while the correspondence between  $W_i$  and the modulating signal is presented in Table 3-17.

$$g(x) = X^{11} + X^9 + 1$$



Fig. 3-31: PRBS-Generating Circuit

Segment No.	Initial value in Mode 1	Initial value in Mode 2	Initial value in Mode 3
11	11111111111	11111111111	11111111111
9	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ $	$0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0$	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1$
7	$0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0$	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1$	$1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0$
5	$0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ $	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0$	$0\;1\;1\;1\;0\;0\;0\;1\;0\;0\;1$
3	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1$	$1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ $	$0\; 0\; 1\; 0\; 0\; 0\; 1\; 1\; 0\; 0\; 1$
1	$0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0$	$0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ $	$1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ $
0	$1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0$	$0\;1\;1\;1\;0\;0\;0\;1\;0\;0\;1$	$0\; 0\; 1\; 0\; 0\; 0\; 0\; 1\; 0\; 1\; 1\\$
2	$0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0$	$0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0$	$1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1$
4	$1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ $	$0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1$	$0\;1\;1\;0\;1\;0\;1\;0\;0\;1\;1$
6	$1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ $	$0\;1\;1\;0\;0\;1\;1\;1\;0\;0\;1$	$1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0$
8	$0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0$	$1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 1 \ $	$0\;1\;1\;0\;0\;0\;1\;0\;0\;1\;0$
10	$1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1$	$0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1$	$1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1$
12	01110001001	$0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 1$	00010011100

Table 3-16: Initial Value of the PRBS-Generating Circuit(Arranged in Ascending Order of Bits from Left to Right)

Note: Each of the initial values shown in Table 3-16 matches the value obtained by setting all bits to an initial value of 1s and continuously generating all carriers in the entire band, starting with the leftmost carrier (carrier 0 of segment 11) and ending with the rightmost carrier.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 14, Item 1, Note 1 (2))

Wi value	Modulating-signal amplitude (I, Q)
1	(-4/3, 0)
0	(+4/3, 0)

(Ordinance Annexed Table 14, Item 2)

# 3.13.2 Continual pilot (CP)

As with the scattered pilot discussed in Section 3.13.1, CP is a BPSK signal modulated in accordance with the carrier position (carrier number within a segment) into which it is to be inserted, and also in accordance with the  $W_i$  value. The correspondence between  $W_i$  and the modulating signal is the same as that shown in Table 3-17. Note that the phase angle of CP determined with respect to carrier position is constant in every symbol.

### 3.13.3 TMCC

TMCC is transmitted by means of the DBPSK signal modulated in accordance with the information shown in Section 3.14. The reference for differential modulation  $B_0$  is stipulated by Wi shown in Section 3.13.1. After differential coding, the TMCC modulating signal takes signal points (+4/3, 0) and (-4/3, 0) for information 0 and 1, respectively.

Information  $B'_0$  to  $B'_{203}$  available following differential coding is stipulated in relation to information  $B_0$  to  $B_{203}$  prior to differential coding, as follows:

 $B'_0 = W_i$  (reference for differential modulation)  $B'_k = B'_{k-1} \oplus B_k$  (k = 1, 203,  $\oplus$  represents EXCLUSIVE OR)

#### 3.13.4 AC (Auxiliary Channel)

AC is a channel designed to convey additional information on broadcasting. The additional information on broadcasting refers to additional information on modulating signal-transmission control or information on seismic motion warning.

AC is transmitted by means of modulating the pilot carrier of a type similar to CP through DBPSK, and its reference for differential modulation is provided at the top frame symbol, and takes the signal point with its value corresponding to Wi stipulated in Section 3.13.1.

The AC modulating signal takes signal points (+4/3, 0) and (-4/3, 0) for information 0 and 1, respectively, available following differential coding. If there is no additional information on broadcasting, information 1 is inserted as stuffing bits.

Two channels are available as ACs: AC1 channel with which the same carrier position is employed for all segments, regardless of which modulation scheme is used; and AC2 channel, which is provided in the differential modulation's segments.

Table 3-18 shows examples of the transmission capacity per segment. Note that the transmission capacity for all television channels varies depending on the segment configuration.

Table 3-18: Examples of Transmission Capacities for AC Carriers (Mode 1, Guard Interval Ratio of 1/8)

	Coherent modul	lation's segment	Differential modulation's segment			
Туре	1 carrier	13 carriers	1 carrier	13 carriers		
AC1	7.0 (kbps)	91.3 (kbps)	7.0 (kbps)	91.3 (kbps)		
AC2		_	14.0 (kbps)	182.5 (kbps)		

(Without error-correction coding)

# 3.14 Transmission spectrum configuration

Fig. 3-32 stipulates the arrangement of OFDM segments. Segment No. 0 must be positioned at the center of the entire band, with successively numbered segments placed alternately above and below that segment.

For hierarchical transmission, segments of the differential modulation must be assigned alternately above and below segment No. 0, in ascending order of segment number, with segments of the coherent modulation assigned alternately above and below segments of the differential modulation.

("Partial-reception portion," "Differential modulation portion," and "Coherent modulation portion" in the figure are merely examples of segment usage.)

Note also that, for hierarchical transmission, the segment position assigned to partial reception must be always No. 0.

To make up the entire transmission spectrum, a continuous carrier with its phase stipulated by  $W_i$  is provided at the right-hand end of the band. The modulating signal used for the rightmost carrier is shown in Table 3-19.



-----> Frequency

Fig. 3-32: OFDM-Segment Numbers on the Transmission Spectrum and Example of Usage

(Ordinance Annexed Table 17)

Mode	Modulating-signal amplitude (I, Q)
Mode 1	(-4/3, 0)
Mode 2	(+4/3, 0)
Mode 3	(+4/3, 0)

Table 3-19: Modulating Signal for the Rightmost Continuous Carrier

(Ordinance Annexed Table 14, Item 3)

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

The continuous carrier at the uppermost frequency of the television band is a pilot carrier required for demodulation when the adjacent segment is a synchronous modulation. This carrier is always provided with ISDB-T.

The partial-reception segment must be assigned to No. 0 in order to ensure easy tuning by the receiver.

### 3.14.1 RF-signal format

The signal format in the RF band is stipulated as follows:

Definition

- *k*: Carrier number that is successive across the entire band, with number 0 assigned to carrier 0 of segment 11
- *n*: Symbol number
- *K*: Carrier total count (Mode 1: 1405; Mode 2: 2809; Mode 3: 5617)
- $T_s$ : Time duration of OFDM Symbol
- $T_{\mathcal{S}}$ : Time duration of guard-interval
- $T_u$ : Time duration of useful part of a symbol
- $f_c$ : RF-signal center frequency
- *Kc*: Carrier number corresponding to the RF-signal center frequency (Mode 1: 702; Mode 2: 1404; Mode 3: 2808)
- c(n,k): Complex signal-point vector corresponding to symbol number n and carrier number k
  - s(t): RF signal

$$s(t) = Re\left\{e^{j2\pi f_{c}t} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{K-1} c(n,k) \Psi(n,k,t)\right\}$$

Provided

$$\Psi(n,k,t) = \begin{cases} e^{j2\pi \frac{k-K_c}{T_u}(t-T_g - nT_s)} & nTs \le t < (n+1)Ts \\ 0 & t < nTs, \quad (n+1)Ts \le t \end{cases}$$

Note that the center frequency for digital terrestrial television broadcasting is stipulated by the RF frequency corresponding to Kc.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 16)

### 3.14.2 Insertion of a guard interval

A guard interval, the latter part of the IFFT (Inverse Fast Fourier Transform) data output for the specified duration, is added without any modification to the beginning of the effective symbol. This operation is shown in Fig. 3-33.



Fig. 3-33: Insertion of a Guard Interval

(Ordinance Annexed Table 5)

# 3.15 TMCC signal (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control)

The information coding scheme and transmission system for the transmission and multiplexing configuration control signal (TMCC signal) are stipulated in this section.

### 3.15.1 Overview

The TMCC signal is used to convey information on how the receiver is to perform demodulation of information such as the hierarchical configuration and the OFDM-segment transmission parameters. The TMCC signal is transmitted by means of the TMCC carrier stipulated in Section 3.13.

# 3.15.2 Assignment of TMCC carrier bits

Table 3-20 shows the assignment of 204 TMCC carrier bits  $B_0$  to  $B_{203}$ .

$B_0$	Reference signal for differential demodulation of TMCC symbols
$B_1 - B_{16}$	Synchronizing signal (w0 = 0011010111101110, w1 = 1100101000010001)
${ m B}_{17} - { m B}_{19}$	Segment type identification (differential: 111; coherent: 000)
${ m B}_{20} - { m B}_{121}$	TMCC information (102 bits)
$B_{122} - B_{203}$	Parity bit

Table 3-20: Bit Assignment

(Ordinance Annexed Table 11)

### 3.15.3 References signal for demodulation of TMCC symbols

The reference amplitude and phase of reference signal for demodulation of TMCC symbols is given by  $W_i$  in Table 3-17.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 11, Note 1)

#### 3.15.4 Synchronizing signal

The synchronizing signal consists of a 16-bit word and takes one of two forms: one with w0 = 0011010111101110 and the other with w1 = 1100101000010001 obtained by inverting each bit of w0. One of w0 and w1 is transmitted alternately for each frame. The following shows an example of synchronizing signal transmission:

Frame No.	Synchronizing signal
1	0011010111101110
2	1100101000010001
3	0011010111101110
4	1100101000010001
:	:

Table 3-21: Example of Synchronizing Signal

Note: Frame numbers are assigned for convenience of description.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 11, Note 2)

# [Description]

A synchronizing signal is designed to indicate frame start and use of for establishment of synchronization between transmission and reception of a TMCC signal and OFDM frame. To prevent false synchronization lock caused by the TMCC-information bit pattern matching that of the synchronizing signal, the polarity of the synchronizing signal is inverted every frame. Because TMCC information itself is not inverted every frame, it is possible to prevent false synchronization lock by means of inversion of the synchronizing-signal polarity.

# 3.15.5 Segment type identification

This signal is used to determine whether a segment is a differential or coherent modulation and consists of a 3-bit word. "111" and "000" are assigned to this signal for a differential and coherent modulation, respectively.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 11, Note 3)

#### [Description]

The number of TMCC carriers varies depending on the segment format. There is only one TMCC carrier if the partial-reception segment belongs to one of the synchronous modulations. Even in this case, to ensure reliable decoding, three bits are assigned to the identification signal such that the code-to-code distance becomes maximal when these bits are inverted.

#### 3.15.6 TMCC information

TMCC information assists the receiver in demodulating and decoding various information including the system identification, the indicator of transmission-parameter switching, the startup control signal (the start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting), the current information, the next information, etc.

The current information represents the current hierarchical configuration and transmission parameters, while the next information includes the transmission parameters following configuration switching. Prior to the countdown for switching (see Section 3.15.6.2), the next information can be specified or changed at the desired time. However, no changes can be made during countdown.

Tables 3-22 and 3-23 show the TMCC-information bit assignment and the transmission parameters included in current and next information, respectively.

The phase-shift-correction value for connected segment transmission is control information for digital terrestrial sound broadcasting (ISDB- $T_{SB}$ ) that uses the same transmission system as ISDB-T.

Of the 102 bits of TMCC information, 90 bits have been defined as of today. The remaining 12 bits are reserved for future expansion. For operation, all the reserved bits are stuffed with "1"s.

Bit assignment		Description	Remarks	
$B_{20} - B_{21}$	S	System identification	See Table 3-24.	
$B_{22} - B_{25}$	Indicator of t	ransmission-parameter switching	See Table 3-25.	
$B_{26}$	Start flag for	Startup control signal r emergency-alarm broadcasting)	See Table 3-26.	
$B_{27}$		Partial-reception flag	See Table 3-27.	
$B_{28} - B_{40}$	Guunaat	Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer A		
$B_{41} - B_{53}$	information	Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer B	See Table 3-23.	
${ m B}_{54} - { m B}_{66}$		Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer C		
$B_{67}$		Partial reception flag	See Table 3-27.	
${ m B}_{68} - { m B}_{80}$		Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer A		
${ m B}_{81} - { m B}_{93}$	Next information	Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer B	See Table 3-23.	
${ m B}_{94} - { m B}_{106}$		Transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer C		
$B_{107} - B_{109}$	Phase-shift-correction value for connected segment transmission (Note)		1 for all bits	
$B_{110} - B_{121}$		1 for all bits		

Table 3-22: TMCC Information

Note: Used for digital terrestrial sound broadcasting or terrestrial multimedia broadcasting.

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1)

Description	Number of bits	Remarks
Carrier modulation mapping scheme	3	See Table 3-28.
Convolutional-coding rate	3	See Table 3-29.
Time interleaving length	3	See Table 3-30.
Number of segments	4	See Table 3-31.

Table 3-23: Contents of Transmission-Parameter Information

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 5)

### 3.15.6.1 System identification

Two bits are assigned to the signal provided for system identification purposes. "00" is for digital terrestrial television broadcasting system and "01" is for digital terrestrial sound broadcasting system, respectively. The remaining values are reserved. Table 3-24 shows the contents of the system identification bits.

Table 3-24: System Identification

${ m B}_{20} - { m B}_{21}$	Meaning
00	Digital terrestrial television broadcasting system
01	Digital terrestrial sound broadcasting system
10, 11	Reserved

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 1)

#### 3.15.6.2 Indicator of transmission-parameter switching

To switch between sets of transmission parameters, the contents of the indicator of transmission-parameter switching are counted down in order to inform the receiver of transmission-parameter switching and adjust the timing accordingly. These indicator bits are normally set to "1111." However, when it is necessary to switch parameters, the countdown starts 15 frames prior to switching, thus decrementing the contents of these bits by 1 every frame. Note that when the contents reach "0000," they must be set back to "1111."

Switching must be performed in synchronization with the next frame that outputs "0000." That is, a new set of transmission parameters apply, starting with the frame with which the contents of the bits are set back to "1111." Table 3-25 shows the meaning of each count of the indicator of transmission-parameter switching.

${ m B}_{22} - { m B}_{25}$	Meaning
1111	Normal value
1110	15 frames prior to switching
1101	14 frames prior to switching
1100	13 frames prior to switching
:	:
0010	3 frames prior to switching
0001	2 frames prior to switching
0000	1 frame prior to switching

#### Table 3-25: Indicator of Transmission-Parameter Switching

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 2)

# [Description]

When switching any of the transmission parameters and flags contained in the current information and the next information in Table 3-22 (partial-reception flag, carrier modulation scheme, convolutional-coding rate, time interleaving length, and the number of segments), the contents of the 4-bit indicator of transmission parameter switching shown in Table 3-25 are counted down. When switching only the startup control signal (the start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting), the contents of the indicator for transmission parameter switching are not counted down.

### 3.15.6.3 Startup control signal (Start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting)

The content of the startup control signal must be "1" and "0" when the receiver startup is and is not controlled, respectively. Table 3-26 shows the meaning of the startup control signal (start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting) in each case.

Table 3-26: Startup Control Signal (Start Flag for Emergency-Alarm Broadcasting)

B <sub>26</sub>	Meaning
0	No startup control
1	Startup control available
	(When an emergency alarm signal is transmitted)

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 3)

# 3.15.6.4 Partial-reception flag

The content of the partial-reception flag must be "1" and "0" when the segment at the center of the transmission band is and is not used for partial reception, respectively. Table 3-27 shows the meaning of the flag content in each case.

When segment No .0 is used for partial reception, hierarchical layer A in Table 3-22 must be assigned to that segment. Note that the content of this flag is set to "1" if there is no next information.

B27/B67	Meaning
0	No partial reception
1	Partial reception available

Table 3-27: Partial-Reception	Flag

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 4)

### 3.15.6.5 Carrier modulation mapping scheme

Table 3-28 shows the meanings of carrier modulation mapping scheme bits.

Note that the content of these bits is "111" for an unused hierarchical layer, or when there is no next information.

$\begin{array}{c} B_{28}\!\!-\!\!B_{30}\!/B_{41}\!\!-\!\!B_{43}\!/B_{54}\!\!-\!\!B_{56} \\ B_{68}\!\!-\!\!B_{70}\!/B_{81}\!-\!\!B_{83}\!/B_{94}\!\!-\!\!B_{96} \end{array}$	Meaning
000	DQPSK
001	QPSK
010	16QAM
011	64QAM
100–110	Reserved
111	Unused hierarchical layer
,	

Table 3-28: Carrier Modulation Mapping Scheme

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 6)

With a TMCC signal, the meanings of all sets of bit contents are the same for all three hierarchical layers. When signals of two hierarchical layers or fewer are transmitted, the content of these bits for vacant hierarchical layer(s) must be "111". Note also that the content of these bits must be "111" if there is no next information, as when broadcasting ends.

### 3.15.6.6 Convolutional-coding rate

Table 3-29 shows the meanings of contents of convolutional-coding-rate bits.

Note that the content of these bits is "111" for an unused hierarchical layer or when there is no next information.

$\substack{\textbf{B}_{31}-\textbf{B}_{33}/\textbf{B}_{44}-\textbf{B}_{46}/\textbf{B}_{57}-\textbf{B}_{59}\\\textbf{B}_{71}-\textbf{B}_{73}/\textbf{B}_{84}-\textbf{B}_{86}/\textbf{B}_{97}-\textbf{B}_{99}}$	Meaning
000	1/2
001	2/3
010	3/4
011	5/6
100	7/8
101–110	Reserved
111	Unused hierarchical layer

Table 3-29: Convolutional-Coding Rate

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 7)

### 3.15.6.7 Time interleaving length

Table 3-30 shows the meanings of contents of time-interleaving-length bits. This information represents time interleaving length I shown in Table 3-12.

Note that the content of these bits is "111" for an unused hierarchical layer or when there is no next information.

$\begin{array}{c} B_{34}\!\!-\!B_{36}\!/B_{47}\!\!-\!B_{49}\!/B_{60}\!\!-\!B_{62} \\ B_{74}\!\!-\!B_{76}\!/B_{87}\!\!-\!B_{89}\!/B_{100}\!\!-\!B_{102} \end{array}$	Meaning (value I)
000	0 (Mode 1), 0 (Mode 2), 0 (Mode 3)
001	4 (Mode 1), 2 (Mode 2), 1 (Mode 3)
010	8 (Mode 1), 4 (Mode 2), 2 (Mode 3)
011	16 (Mode 1) , 8 (Mode 2) , 4 (Mode 3)
100	Not used
101–110	Reserved
111	Unused hierarchical layer

Table 3-30: Time Interleaving Length

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 8)

Note also that "100" in Table 3-30 are assigned to the use of digital terrestrial sound broadcasting system and are not used in this system.
#### 3.15.6.8 Number of segments

Table 3-31 shows 4-bit binary code corresponding to the number of segments for each hierarchical layer. Note that the 4-bit binary code is "1111" for an unused hierarchical layer or when there is no next information.

$\begin{array}{c} B_{37}\!\!-\!\!B_{40}\!/B_{50}\!\!-\!\!B_{53}\!/B_{63}\!\!-\!\!B_{66} \\ B_{77}\!\!-\!\!B_{80}\!/B_{90}\!\!-\!\!B_{93}\!/B_{103}\!\!-\!\!B_{106} \end{array}$	Meaning
0000	Reserved
0001	1 segment
0010	2 segments
0011	3 segments
0100	4 segments
0101	5 segments
0110	6 segments
0111	7 segments
1000	8 segments
1001	9 segments
1010	10 segments
1011	11 segments
1100	12 segments
1101	13 segments
1110	Reserved
1111	Unused hierarchical layer

Table 3-31: Number of Segments

(Notification No. 304, Annexed Table 1, Annexed Statement 9)

#### 3.15.6.9 Channel-coding scheme

 $B_{20}$  to  $B_{121}$  of TMCC information are error-correction coded by means of the shortened code (184,102) of the difference-set cyclic code (273,191). The following shows the generating polynomial of the (273,191) code:

$$g(x) = x^{82} + x^{77} + x^{76} + x^{71} + x^{67} + x^{66} + x^{56} + x^{52} + x^{48} + x^{40} + x^{36} + x^{34} + x^{24} + x^{22} + x^{18} + x^{10} + x^4 + 1$$
(Ordinance Annexed Table 12, Item 2)

[Description]

Because TMCC information is used to specify transmission parameters and control the receiver operation, it must be transmitted with higher reliability than program signals. Due to the difficulties involved with a receiver using the same concatenated-code decoding circuit for TMCC information and program signals, and in consideration of the fact that the use of block code is advantageous due to its shorter processing time, the shortened code (184,102) of the difference-set cyclic code (273,191) is used as the error-correction code for TMCC information. Note also that the same TMCC signals are transmitted by means of multiple carriers. Therefore, it is possible to reduce the required C/N by simply adding these signals, thus ensuring improved reception performance. These error-correction techniques and the addition process make it possible to receive TMCC signals at a lower C/N than for program signals.

Note also that, by excluding the synchronizing signal and segment type identification from the group of bits checked for errors, the contents of all TMCC carrier bits are the same, which makes it possible to determine the content of each bit, including a parity bit, by determining the contents of the majority of the carriers.

## 3.15.6.10 Modulation scheme

TMCC carriers must be modulated through DBPSK (see Section 3.13.3).

# 3.16 AC (Auxiliary Channel) signals

This section stipulates the transmission system for AC signals.

### 3.16.1 Overview

AC signals are transmitted using the AC carriers stipulated in Section 3.13.

"AC signal" refers to an additional information signal on broadcasting.

The additional information on broadcasting means the additional information on the transmission control of modulating wave or the seismic motion warning (Earthquake Early Warning) information.

The seismic motion warning information is transmitted using the AC carriers of segment No. 0.

(Ordinance Article 22)

It is possible to transmit the additional information on the transmission control of modulating wave using arbitrary AC carriers.

## 3.16.2 AC signal bit assignment

Table 3-32 shows the bit assignment of  $B_0$  to  $B_{203}$  for 204-bit AC signal arranged on segment No. 0.

$B_0$	Reference signal for demodulation of AC symbols
$B_1 - B_3$	Configuration identification
$B_{4}-B_{203}$	Additional information on the transmission control of modulating wave or seismic motion warning information

Table 3-32: AC Signal Bit Assignment

(Ordinance Annexed Table 18)

## 3.16.3 Reference signal for demodulation of AC symbols

The reference amplitude and phase reference signal for demodulating of AC symbols is given by Wi in Table 3-17.

(Ordinance Annexed Table 18, Note 1)

#### 3.16.4 Configuration identification

To identify the configuration of an AC signal, three bits are assigned as configuration identification. Table 3-33 shows the meanings of bit assignment for configuration identification.

$B_1 - B_3$	Meaning				
000					
010					
011	Transmits the additional information				
100	on the transmission control of modulating wave				
101	modulating wave				
111	]				
001	Transmits the seismic motion warning				
110	information				

Table 3-33: Configuration Identification

(Ordinance Annexed Table 18, Note 2)

"001" and "110" representing the transmission of seismic motion warning information must be the same codes as those of the top three bits  $(B_1 - B_3)$  of a TMCC synchronizing signal, and their outputs are transmitted alternatively to each frame at the same timing as the TMCC signal.

#### 3.16.5 Additional information on the transmission control of modulating waves

In consideration of versatile usage possibilities, no bit assignment is stipulated to the transmission means for the additional information on the transmission control of modulating waves.

### 3.16.6 Seismic motion warning information

Table 3-34 shows the bit assignment for seismic motion warning information.

Bit assignment	Explanation	Remarks
$B_4 - B_{16}$	Synchronizing signal	Refer to Table 3-35.
$B_{17} - B_{18}$	Start/ending flag	Refer to Table 3-36.
$B_{19} - B_{20}$	Update flag	
$B_{21} - B_{23}$	Signal identification	Refer to Table 3-37.
$B_{24} - B_{111}$	Detailed seismic motion warning information	Refer to Table 3-38.
$B_{112} - B_{121}$	CRC	Refer to Fig. 3-35.
$B_{122} - B_{203}$	Parity bit	

(Notification No. 306)

The seismic motion warning information is transmitted by the AC carriers of the segment No. 0. Note that the seismic motion warning information must be the same in all AC carriers within the segment No. 0.

### [Description]

Letting the seismic motion warning information be the same in all AC carriers within the segment No. 0 enables the seismic motion warning information transmitted by different AC carriers to be added in analog on the receiver side, thus making reception possible even in lower CN ratios.

#### 3.16.6.1 Synchronizing signal

When transmitting the seismic motion warning information, 13 bits are assigned as a synchronizing signal. The value identical to 13 bits ( $B_4-B_{16}$ ) excluding the top three bits of the TMCC synchronizing signal must be taken.

Frame number	Synchronizing signal
1	1010111101110
2	0101000010001
3	1010111101110
4	0101000010001
:	:

Table 3-35	Example	of Synch	ronizing	Signal	Transmission
------------	---------	----------	----------	--------	--------------

Note: Frame numbers are assigned for the convenience of explanation. (Notification No. 306, Note 3)

The code with the configuration identification and synchronizing signal combined must be the synchronizing word (w0=0011010111101110, w1=1100101000010001) with 16 bits identical to that for the TMCC synchronizing signal, and w0 and w1 are fed alternatively every frame at the same timing as the TMCC synchronizing signal.

#### [Description]

As it is possible to add TMCC and AC signal in analog, the reception sensibility for frame synchronization in receivers can be enhanced.

#### 3.16.6.2 Start and ending flag

Two bits are assigned as the start and ending flag of seismic motion warning information. Table 3-36 shows the meanings of the start and ending flag bits.

${ m B_{17}-B_{18}}$	Meaning
00	Detailed seismic motion warning information available <sup>(Note)</sup>
11	Detailed seismic motion warning information not available
10, 01	Not used

Table 3-36: Start and Ending Flag

Note: Includes a test signal for detailed seismic motion warning information (Notification No. 306, Note 4)

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

When initiating to feed the seismic motion warning information, the start and ending flags are changed from "11" to "00." Furthermore, when completing to feed the seismic motion warning information, the start and ending flags are changed from "00" to "11."

#### [Description]

When there is no additional information on broadcasting, all bits of the AC signal are modulated to "1" as stipulated in Section 3.13.4. Therefore, the start and ending flags when indicating the detailed seismic motion warning information or its test signals must be set to "00." In addition, in order to enhance the reliability in start and ending flags, an inverse signal with its inter-code spacings set to the maximum must be employed using two bits for the start and ending flags. To ensure reliability in start and ending flags, "10" and "01" must not be used. The start and ending flags can be used as the startup signal of receivers.

### 3.16.6.3 Update flag

An update flag must be incremented by one every time there is a change in the content of a series of the detailed seismic motion warning information to be transmitted when the start and ending flags are "00," and its starting value must be set to "00" while it must return to "00" after "11." When the start and ending flag is "11," the update flag must be set to "11."

(Notification No. 306, Note 5)

### [Description]

While the value of start and ending flags of the seismic motion warning information is maintained in the state of "00," and when the signal identification  $(B_{21}-B_{23})$  or the content of the seismic motion warning information  $(B_{56}-B_{111})$  shown in Table 3-38 is updated, the value of the update flag must be incremented by one as indicated in Fig. 3-34, and the fact that the signal identification or the seismic motion information is updated must be notified to receivers.

An example of the update flag outputs is shown in Fig. 3-34.

Start/ending flag	"11" "00"				"11"		
	[						
Update flag	"11"	"00"	"01"	"10"	"11"	"00"	"11"
Signal identification	"111"			"000"			"111"
Contents of seismic-motion information	None	No. 1 report	No. 2 report	No. 3 report	No. 4 report	No. 5 report	None

Fig. 3-34: Example of Update Flag Output

Note: No. 1 report, No. 2 report, etc., show the state of changes in the signal identification indicated in Table 3-37 or the content of seismic motion information indicated in Table 3-38. There must be no change in the value of the update flag even if the changes occur in the current time or the page classification indicated in Table 3-38.

Note that a variety of patterns are conceivable in the output configurations and the updating of contents, and the details of specific output methods and update flag operation methods are stipulated separately.

#### 3.16.6.4 Signal identification

The signal identification of seismic motion warning information is a signal used to identify the types of the detailed seismic motion warning information. The meanings of signal identification bit values must be set as shown in Table 3-37.

$B_{21} - B_{23}$	Meaning
000	Detailed seismic motion warning information (with relevant area) $(Note 1)$
001	Detailed seismic motion warning information (without relevant area) $(Note 2)$
010	Test signal for detailed seismic motion warning information (with relevant area) <sup>(Note 1)</sup>
011	Test signal for detailed seismic motion warning information (without relevant area) <sup>(Note 2)</sup>
100	
101	Reserved
110	
111	No detailed seismic motion warning information available

Table 3-37: Signal Identification

Note 1: This means that there are target areas for a seismic motion warning within broadcasting areas.

Note 2: This means that there are no target areas for a seismic motion warning within broadcasting areas.

(Notification No. 306, Note 6, Annexed Table 1)

When the start and ending flags are "00" and "11," the signal identification "000"/"001"/"010"/"011" and "111" are fed, respectively.

The test signal for the detailed seismic motion warning information (with/without relevant areas) and the detailed seismic motion warning information (with/without relevant areas) are not fed simultaneously.

#### [Description]

As shown in Table 3-40, it is possible to feed a maximum of two pieces of seismic motion warning information, but it is not allowed to feed a test signal and a real signal simultaneously.

In addition, when the signal identification feeds the seismic motion information with relevant area and without

Relevant area simultaneously, either information is fed as the seismic motion information with relevant area. By doing so, it is possible to promptly notify receivers of at least one piece of seismic motion information as the information with the relevant area.

#### 3.16.6.5 Detailed seismic motion warning information

The bit assignment for the detailed seismic motion warning information is stipulated on a signal identification basis.

# 3.16.6.5.1 Detailed seismic motion warning information for Signal Identification "000"/"001"/"010"/"011"

Table 3-38 shows the bit assignment of detailed seismic motion warning information for the signal identification "000"/"001"/"010"/"011" (when the signal identification represents the detailed seismic motion warning information or the test signal for detailed seismic motion warning information).

Bit assignment	Explanation			
${ m B}_{24} - { m B}_{54}$	Current time	The information of current time information when the seismic motion warning information is fed.		
B55	Page classification	The code used to identify the types of information on seismic-motion, which is the target of seismic motion warning		
${ m B}_{56}-{ m B}_{111}$	Seismic motion information	When the value of page classification (B <sub>55</sub> ) is "0": refer to Table 3-39 "1": refer to Table 3-40		

# Table 3-38: Detailed Seismic Motion Warning Information for Signal Identification "000"/"001"/"010"/"011"

(Notification No. 306, Annexed Table 2)

When the seismic motion information is not fed, the page classification must be "0" and all of the seismic motion information must be "1."

The current time must be expressed by a binary number system with its elapsed seconds starting from the reference year, month, day, hour, minute, and second separately defined, and low 31 bits are assigned by MSB first.

#### [Description]

When transmitting the seismic motion warning information, checking the time of receivers against the output time information enables us to confirm the reliability of the seismic motion warning information received in the receivers compatible with the automated starting equipped with a time adjustment function through TOT (Time Offset Table), communication lines, etc.

Note that, in the seismic motion information, the bit assignment for the information to be transmitted varies depending on the codes of page classification. It is possible for receivers to know which information is transmitted by the confirmation of page classifications. When the page classification is "0," the information for the target area of the seismic motion warning is transmitted as shown in Table 3-39. When the page classification is "1," the information for the epicenter of the seismic motion warning is transmitted as shown in Table 3-39. When the page classification is "1," the information for the epicenter of the seismic motion warning is transmitted as shown in Table 3-40. However, both of the page classifications "0" and "1" seismic motion information are not necessarily transmitted.

#### (1) Seismic motion information for page classification "0"

If the page classification is "0," this classification must mean the information indicative of the seismic motion warning target area. Table 3-39 shows the bit assignment to areas. The bit assigned to the areas including the seismic motion warning target areas must be "0," while the bit assigned to the areas not including the seismic motion warning target areas must be "1." Note that if the seismic motion information is not fed, the bit must be "1" in all areas.

Bit	Area	Bit	Area	Bit	Area
B56	Hokkaido Center	B75	Niigata Prefecture	B94	Hiroshima Prefecture
B57	Hokkaido South	B76	Toyama Prefecture	$B_{95}$	Tokushima Prefecture
$B_{58}$	Hokkaido North	B77	Ishikawa Prefecture	B96	Kagawa Prefecture
$B_{59}$	Hokkaido East	$B_{78}$	Fukui Prefecture	$B_{97}$	Ehime Prefecture
B60	Aomori Prefecture	B79	Yamanashi Prefecture	$B_{98}$	Kochi Prefecture
B61	Iwate Prefecture	$B_{80}$	Nagano Prefecture	$B_{99}$	Yamaguchi Prefecture
B62	Miyagi Prefecture	$B_{81}$	Gifu Prefecture	$B_{100}$	Fukuoka Prefecture
B63	Akita Prefecture	$B_{82}$	Shizuoka Prefecture	B101	Saga Prefecture
B64	Yamagata Prefecture	$B_{83}$	Aichi Prefecture	$B_{102}$	Nagasaki Prefecture
$B_{65}$	Fukushima Prefecture	$B_{84}$	Mie Prefecture	B103	Kumamoto Prefecture
$B_{66}$	Ibaraki Prefecture	$B_{85}$	Shiga Prefecture	$B_{104}$	Oita Prefecture
B67	Tochigi Prefecture	$B_{86}$	Kyoto Prefecture	$B_{105}$	Miyazaki Prefecture
$B_{68}$	Gunma Prefecture	$B_{87}$	Osaka Prefecture	$B_{106}$	Kagoshima
B69	Saitama Prefecture	$B_{88}$	Hyogo Prefecture	$B_{107}$	Amami Islands
B70	Chiba Prefecture	$B_{89}$	Nara Prefecture	$B_{108}$	Okinawa main islands
B71	Tokyo	$B_{90}$	Wakayama Prefecture	$B_{109}$	Daito Island
B <sub>72</sub>	Izu Islands	$B_{91}$	Tottori Prefecture	B <sub>110</sub>	Miyako Island
B73	Ogasawara	$B_{92}$	Shimane Prefecture	B111	Yaeyama
<b>B</b> 74	Kanagawa Prefecture	B93	Okayama Prefecture		

Table 3-39: Seismic Motion Information for Page Classification "0"

- Note 1) Hokkaido Center refers to Akabira-shi, Ashibetsu-shi, Ishikari-shi, Iwamizawa-shi, Utashinai-shi, Eniwa-shi, Ebetsu-shi, Otaru-shi, Kitahiroshima-shi, Sapporo-shi, Sunagawa-shi, Takikawa-shi, Chitose-shi, Bibai-shi, Fukagawa-shi, Mikasa-shi and Yubari-shi, and areas within the jurisdiction of Ishikari, Shiribeshi, and Sorachi General Subprefectural Bureaus.
- Note 2) Hokkaido South refers to Date-shi, Tomakomai-shi, Noboribetsu-shi, Hakodate-shi, Hokuto-shi and Muroran-shi, and areas within the jurisdiction of Iburi, Oshima, Hidaka, and Hiyama General Subprefectural Bureaus.
- Note 3) Hokkaido North refers to Asahikawa-shi, Shibetsu-shi, Nayoro-shi, Furano-shi, Rumoi-shi and Wakkanai-shi, and areas within the jurisdiction of Kamikawa, Souya, and Rumoi General Subprefectural Bureaus.
- Note 4) Hokkaido East refers to Abashiri-shi, Obihiro-shi, Kitami-shi, Kushiro-shi, Nemuro-shi and Monbetsu-shi, and areas within the jurisdiction of Okhotsk, Kushiro, Tokachi, and Nemuro General Subprefectural Bureaus.
- Note 5) Tokyo refers to the Tokyo Metropolitan Area (excluding areas within the jurisdiction of the Oshima, Ogasawara, Hachijo Island, and Miyake Island Branch Offices).
- Note 6) Izu Islands refers to areas within the jurisdiction of the Oshima, Hachijo Island, and Miyake Island Branch Offices (excluding Sumisuto Island, Torishima Island, and Bayonaise Rocks).
- Note 7) Ogasawara refers to areas within the jurisdiction of the Ogasawara Islands Branch Office.

- Note 8) Kagoshima refers to Kagoshima Prefecture (excluding Amami-shi and Oshima District). Note 9) Amami Islands refers to Amami-shi and Oshima District.
- Note 10) Okinawa main islands refers to Itoman-shi, Urazoe-shi, Uruma-shi, Okinawa-shi, Ginowan-shi, Tomigusuku-shi, Nago-shi, Naha-shi, Nanjo-shi, Kunigami District, Shimajiri District (excluding Kitadaito-mura and Minamidaito-mura), and Nakagami District.
- Note 11) Daito Island refers to Shimajiri District (restricted to Kitadaito-mura and Minamidaito-mura).

Note 12) Miyako Island refers to Miyakojima-shi and Miyako District.

Note 13) Yaeyama refers to Ishigaki-shi and Yaeyama District.

(Notification No. 306, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 1)

#### [Description]

When multiple seismic motion warnings are generated simultaneously (the total number is two at maximum), there may be the cases where the page classification "0" seismic motion information (area information) is fed with the first one and the second one being fed independently. In this case, the update flag is not updated when the output of seismic motion warning information (area information) is changed from the first one to the second one or from the second one to the first one.

#### (2) Seismic motion information for page classification "1" Table 3-40 shows the seismic motion information for page classification "1."

Bit assignment		Explanation			
$B_{56}$	Total amount of seismic motion information	This is used to identify the total number of the seismic motion information being transmitted. When the total number are 1 and 2, "0" and "1" must be used respectively.			
$B_{57}$	Seismic motion information identification	This is used to identify the seismic motion information being transmitted			
$B_{58} - B_{66}$	Seismic motion warning identification <sup>(Note)</sup>	This is used to identify the seismic motion warning.			
B67	Information type	This is used for the identification of types of seismic motion warnings. "0" must be indicated when the seismic motion information shows that a seismic motion warning was issued, while "1" must be indicated when the information shows that the seismic motion warning was cancelled. Note that B <sub>68</sub> -B <sub>110</sub> must all be "1" when the information shows that the seismic motion warning was cancelled.			
$B_{68}$	Northern latitude and southern latitude flag	"0" and "1" indicate northern latitude and southern latitude, respective			
B <sub>69</sub> –B <sub>78</sub>	Latitude information <sup>(Note)</sup>	This is the domain used to indicate the latitude of an epicenter, and the value shall be determined by 10 times the latitude, which is expressed using a binary system.			
<b>B</b> 79	West longitude and east longitude flag	"0" and "1" indicate east latitude and west latitude, respectively.			
$B_{80}-B_{90}$	Longitude information <sup>(Note)</sup>	This is the domain used to indicate the longitude of an epicenter, and the value shall be determined by 10 times the longitude, which is expressed using a binary system.			
B91-B100	Depth information <sup>(Note)</sup>	n <sup>(Note)</sup> This is used to indicate the depth of an epicenter. The value shall be the depth (km), which is expressed using a binary system.			
B101-B110	Occurrence time <sup>(Note)</sup>	This is used to indicate the occurrence time of seismic motion.			
B <sub>111</sub>	Reserved	This must be "1."			

## Table 3-40: Seismic Motion Information for Page Classification "1"

Note: Numerical values must be expressed by a binary system and assigned by MSB first. (Notification No. 306, Annexed Table 2, Annexed Statement 2)

The seismic motion information identification for  $B_{57}$  must be "0" if the seismic motion information being transmitted is the first one, while that must be "1" if the information is the second one.

The occurrence time is determined on the basis of the reference year, month, day, hour, minute, and second identical to the current time indicated in  $B_{24}$ – $B_{54}$ , and the elapsed seconds from the reference time is expressed by a binary system in which low 10 bits are assigned by MSB first.

#### [Description]

For "seismic motion warning identification," nine bits are assigned to identify the seismic motion warning information when multiple seismic motion warnings are generated. When discriminating multiple seismic motion warning information based on the time (on the second time scale), the use of nine bits seismic motion warning identification allows the identification of the seismic motion warning information for the past eight minutes and 32 seconds.

A comparison between the current time of  $B_{24}-B_{54}$  and the occurrence time of  $B_{101}-B_{110}$  makes it possible to know the elapsed number of seconds from the occurrence of the seismic motion.

# 3.16.6.5.2 Detailed seismic motion warning information for signal identification "100"/"101"/"110"

This is used for future extension, and must be "1" in all cases.

# 3.16.6.5.3 Detailed seismic motion warning information for signal identification "111"(Note)

Table 3-41 shows the bit assignment for the detailed seismic motion warning information for the signal identification "111" (the case where the signal identification indicates "detailed seismic motion warning information is not available").

Table 3-41: Detailed Seismic Motion	Warning Information for	Signal Identification "111"
-------------------------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------------

Bit assignment	Explanation			
$B_{24} - B_{55}$	Reserved	Must be "1" in all cases		
B56-B66	Identification of broadcasting organizations	Code used to identify broadcasting organizations		
B <sub>67</sub> –B <sub>111</sub> Reserved		Must be "1" in all cases		

(Notification No. 306, Annexed Table 3)

Note: When the start/ending flag is "11," the signal identification "111" is fed.

#### [Description]

Broadcasting company identification 11 bits are uniquely assigned to broadcasting organizations across the country. The broadcasting organizations that send the seismic motion warning information can be identified by this AC signal only.

## 3.16.6.6 CRC

CRC bits must be generated from  $B_{21}-B_{111}$  of the seismic motion warning information by using the generating polynomial shown in Fig. 3-35, and the initial value of each register of the circuit must be "0."





D : Represents an 1-bit delay element

(+) : Represents an EXCLUSIVE-OR arithmetic element

Fig.: 3-35: CRC Generating Circuit

(Notification No. 306, Note 8)

[Description]

The information on detailed seismic motion warning information is important information and is required to have a high degree of reliability. Therefore, after decoding with the error-correction codes indicated in Section 3.16.6.7, the detection of errors by CRC shall be made possible.

## 3.16.6.7 Parity Bit

Parity bits shall be generated from  $B_{17}-B_{121}$  of the seismic motion warning information by the shortened (187,105) code of the (273,191) difference-set cyclic code. The generating polynomial of the (273,191) difference-set cyclic code shall be as follows.

Generating polynomial:  $g(x) = x^{82} + x^{77} + x^{76} + x^{71} + x^{67} + x^{66} + x^{56} + x^{52} + x^{48} + x^{40} + x^{36} + x^{34} + x^{24} + x^{22} + x^{18} + x^{10} + x^4 + 1$ 

(Notification No. 306, Note 9)

[Description]

The information on the seismic motion warning information is important information and is required to have a high degree of reliability. Therefore, the information is protected by the error-correction code using different-set cyclic code, as is the case with TMCC. Configuration identification and synchronizing signals shall be excluded from the error-correction, and the shortened (187,105) codes of the (273,191) difference-set cyclic codes shall be used.

#### 3.16.7 Modulation scheme

The modulation of AC carriers shall be implemented through DBPSK. (See Section 3.13.4)

# **Chapter 4: Frequency Utilization Requirements**

# 4.1 Frequency bandwidth and others

A frequency bandwidth of 5.7 MHz must be used for digital terrestrial television broadcasting. The carrier frequency must be the center frequency of the frequency bandwidth.

(Ordinance Article 19, Radio Equipment Regulations Annexed Table 2 No.1, No10-2(1))

[Description]

The frequency bandwidth must be 5.7 MHz when the OFDM carrier bandwidth is 5.572..MHz with 4-kHz spacings between carrier frequencies in Mode 1. This bandwidth must apply regardless of which mode is chosen, and has been selected to ensure that the bandwidth of 5.610 MHz has some margin to determine that each carrier of the uppermost and lowermost in the 5.572..MHz bandwidth includes 99% of energy.

The center frequency is the frequency of the carrier at the center, among an odd number of OFDM carriers.

# 4.2 Permissible transmission-frequency deviation

The permissible transmission-frequency deviation must be 1 Hz.

- Note 1: Excluding those provided in Note 2, a deviation of 500 Hz is allowed if the Minister for Internal Affairs and Communications approves it on the grounds that it will not substantially hinder the efficient use of radio waves.
- Note 2: Broadcasting is conducted only by means of relaying the broadcasting programs of other broadcasting stations.
  - (a) Power applied to antenna transmission lines more than 0.5W: 3kHz
  - (b) Power applied to antenna transmission lines more than 0.05W and 0.5W or less:  $10 \rm kHz$
  - (c) Power applied to antenna transmission lines 0.05W or less: 20kHz (Notification No.68)
- Note 3: Other than as provided in the above, in two or more broadcasting stations configured as a single frequency network which means a group of stations in the case of transmitting using radio waves with the same frequency and the same broadcasting programs as those of other stations in the same broadcasting service area ("Broadcasting Service Area" means such Broadcasting Service Area as prescribed in Article 2-2, paragraph (2), item (ii) of the Broadcast Act [Act No.132 of 1950]), the relative permissible transmission-frequency deviation between those two or more broadcasting stations should be within 10Hz.

(Radio Equipment Regulations Annexed Table 1, 7-10, Note 21, Note 49. Notification No.68)

# 4.3 IFFT sampling frequency and permissible deviation

The IFFT sampling frequency for use with OFDM for digital terrestrial television broadcasting must be as follows:

fs = 512/63 MHz (8.126984 MHz)

Note also that the permissible deviation must be  $\pm 0.3$  ppm.

[Description]

This deviation has been determined to ensure that the frequency deviation (caused by IFFT sample frequency error) of the carrier at each end of the bandwidths is 1 Hz or less.

# 4.4 Transmission-spectrum mask

The transmission-spectrum limit mask is specified as shown below in Fig. 4-1. The related break points for the spectrum mask are listed in Table 4-1.



Fig. 4-1: Transmission-spectrum limit mask for digital terrestrial television broadcasting

Difference from the center frequency (MHz)	Attenuation relative to average power P (dB/10 kHz)	Type of stipulation
$\pm 2.79$	-27.4	Upper limit
$\pm 2.86$	-47.4	Upper limit
$\pm 3.00$	-54.4	Upper limit
$\pm 4.36$	$-77.4^{*1*2}$	Upper limit

Table 4-1: Breakpoints for transmission-spectrum mask

\*1 If the frequency corresponding to an adjacent channel number (the channel number between 13 and 62 that is one number different from the channel number of the television broadcasting corresponding to the allocated frequency in the Plan for the Available Frequencies Allocated to Broadcasting stipulated in item (ii) of paragraph (2) of Article 7 of the Radio Law) is not used for standard television broadcasting (excluding digital broadcasting and restricted to the effective radiation power that is less than ten times the own effective radiation power) within the own broadcasting area, the following specifications should be applied:

-(73.4+10logP) dB/10 kHz in the case of radio equipment whose transmission power is

more than 0.25 W and equal to or less than 2.5 W;

-67.4 dB/10 kHz in the case of radio equipment whose transmission power (excluding the case of \*2) is 0.25 W or less.

\*2 If the frequency corresponding to an adjacent channel number is not used for standard television broadcasting (excluding digital broadcasting) within one's own broadcasting area, the following specifications should be applied:

-(73.4+10logP) dB/10kHz in the case of radio equipment whose transmission power is more than 0.025W and less than 0.25W;

-57.4 dB/10kHz in the case of radio equipment whose transmission power is 0.025W or less.

Note: For the adjacent channels of radio equipment that amplifies multiple waves together, an attenuation of -27.4 dB/10 kHz relative to average power P can be set as the upper limit regardless of the above table.

(Radio Equipment Regulations Annexed Figure 4-8-8)

The above specifications are accompanied with transitional measures (supplementary provisions to the Radio Equipment Regulations --Ministerial Ordinance No. 119 issued by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications in 2005).

[Description]

If an adjacent channel is used for standard television broadcasting (excluding digital broadcasting and restricted to the effective radiation power that is less than ten times the own effective radiation power) within the own broadcasting area, the solid line of Fig. 4-1 (attenuation relative to average power P is -77.4 dB/10 kHz at the frequencies of +/-4.36 MHz from the center frequency) should be applied regardless of the value of P.

# 4.5 Maximum permitted power level of spurious emission or unwanted emission

The power supplied to antenna transmission line	Maximum permitted power level of spurious emission in out-of-band domain	Maximum permitted power level of unwanted emission in spurious domain
Above 25 W	20 mW or less, and 60 dB* lower than the average power of the fundamental frequency	12 mW or less, and 60 dB lower than the average power of the fundamental frequency
Above 1 W, and 25 W or less	$25 \ \mu W$ or less	$25 \ \mu W$ or less
1 W or less	100 µW or less	

\* For the maximum permitted power level of spurious emission in the out-of-band region for transmission equipment whose transmission power exceeds 8 kW, the values specified in Section 4.4 shall be used.

(Radio Equipment Regulations Annexed Table 3, Item 5(6))

The above specifications are accompanied with transitional measures (supplementary provisions to the Radio Equipment Regulations--Ministerial Ordinance No. 119 issued by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications in 2005).

# Annex A: Transmission Parameters and Data Rates for 7MHz and 8MHz Bandwidth Systems

The ISDB-T system can be extended to the systems with 7MHz or 8MHz bandwidth by increasing the signal bandwidth or the carrier spacings of the 6MHz bandwidth system by 7/6 or 8/6 times, respectively. When extended this way, the FFT sampling frequency is also increased by 7/6 or 8/6 times, while this leads to a decrease in the effective symbol length by 6/7 or 6/8 times, respectively. Note that the broadcasting TS transmission clock is four times the FFT sampling clock, and the same shall be applied to 7MHz and 8MHz bandwidth systems.

Table A-1 through Table A-4 show OFDM segment parameters, transmission signal parameters, data rates per a segment, and total data rates for all 13 segments of the 7MHz bandwidth system. Note that in a similar way, Table A-5 through Table A-8 show parameters and data rates of the 8MHz bandwidth system.

Mode		Mode 1		Mo	Mode 2		Mode 3	
Seg	ment bandwidth (Bws)	7000/14 = 500  kHz						
Spacir	ngs between carrier frequencies (Cs)	Bws = 4.629	/108 … kHz	Bws = 2.314	/216 kHz	Bws = 1.157	Bws/432 = 1.157… kHz	
ş	Total count	108	108	216	216	432	432	
rien	Data	96	96	192	192	384	384	
car	$SP^{*1}$	9	0	18	0	36	0	
of	$CP^{*1}$	0	1	0	1	0	1	
ber	$\mathrm{TMCC}^{*2}$	1	5	2	10	4	20	
um	AC1*3	2	2	4	4	8	8	
Z	$AC2^{*3}$	0	4	0	9	0	19	
Carrier modulation scheme		QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	
Symbols per frame		204						
Effective symbol length		216 µs		432	2 μs	864	l μs	
Guard interval		54 µs (1/4), 27 µs (1/8), 13.5 µs (1/16), 6.75 µs (1/32)		108 μs (1/4), 54 μs (1/8), 27 μs (1/16), 13.5 μs (1/32)		216 μs (1/4), 108 μs (1/8), 54 μs (1/16), 27 μs (1/32)		
Symbol length		270 μs (1/4), 243 μs (1/8), 229.5 μs (1/16), 222.75 μs (1/32)		540 μs (1/4), 486 μs (1/8), 459 μs (1/16), 445.5 μs (1/32)		1080 μs (1/4), 972 μs (1/8), 918 μs (1/16), 891 μs (1/32)		
Frame length		55.08 ms (1/4), 49.572 ms (1/8), 46.818 ms (1/16), 45.441 ms (1/32)		110.16 ms (1/4), 99.144 ms (1/8), 93.636 ms (1/16), 90.882 ms (1/32)		220.32 ms (1/4), 198.288 ms (1/8), 187.272 ms (1/16), 181.764 ms (1/32)		
FFT s	ampling frequency	2048/216 = 9.481481···· MHz						
	Inner code	Convolutional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8)						
	Outer code	RS (204,188)						

# Table A-1: OFDM-Segment Parameters (7MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: SP (Scattered Pilot) and CP (Continual Pilot) are used by the receiver for synchronization and demodulation purposes.

\*2: TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control) is control information.

\*3: AC (Auxiliary Channel) is used to transmit additional information for broadcasting. AC1 is available in an equal number in all segments, while AC2 is available only in differential modulated segments.

Mo	ode	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3		
Number of OFDM segment(N <sub>s</sub> )		13				
Bandwidth (Bw)		$\begin{array}{ll} Bws \times N_s + Cs & Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 6.504 \cdots MHz & = 6.502 \cdots MHz \end{array}$		$\begin{array}{l} Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 6.501 \cdots MHz \end{array}$		
Number of differential	segment of modulation		$n_d$			
Number of coherent r	segment of nodulation		$n_{s}$ $(n_{s}+n_{d}=N_{s})$			
Spacings bet freque (C	ween carrier encies Ss)	Bws/108 = 4.629…kHz	Bws/216 = 2.314…kHz	Bws/432 = 1.157…kHz		
ş	Total count	$108 \times N_s + 1 = 1405$	$216 \times N_s + 1 = 2809$	$432 \times N_s + 1 = 5617$		
rier	Data	$96 \times N_s = 1248$	$192 \times N_s = 2496$	$384 \times N_s = 4992$		
car	SP	$9 \times n_s$	18×ns	36×n <sub>s</sub>		
of	$CP^{*1}$	nd + 1	nd + 1	nd + 1		
ber	TMCC	$n_s + 5 \times n_d$	$2 \times n_s + 10 \times n_d$	$4 \times n_s + 20 \times n_d$		
m	AC1	2×Ns= 26	4×N₅= 52	8×Ns= 104		
Ż AC2		4×nd 9×nd		19×nd		
Carrier modulation scheme		QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, DQPSK				
Symbols per frame			204			
Effective symbol length		$216~\mu s$	$432 \ \mu s$	$864 \ \mu s$		
Guard interval		54 μs (1/4), 27 μs (1/8), 13.5 μs (1/16), 6.75 μs (1/32)	108 μs (1/4), 54 μs (1/8), 27 μs (1/16), 13.5 μs (1/32)	216 μs (1/4), 108 μs (1/8), 54 μs (1/16), 27 μs (1/32)		
Symbol length		270 μs (1/4), 243 μs (1/8), 229.5 μs (1/16), 222.75 μs (1/32)	540 μs (1/4), 486 μs (1/8), 459 μs (1/16), 445.5 μs (1/32)	1080 μs (1/4), 972 μs (1/8), 918 μs (1/16), 891 μs (1/32)		
Frame length		55.08 ms (1/4), 49.572 ms (1/8), 46.818 ms (1/16), 45.441 ms (1/32)	$5.08 \text{ ms} (1/4),$ $110.16 \text{ ms} (1/4),$ $220.3$ $9.572 \text{ ms} (1/8),$ $99.144 \text{ ms} (1/8),$ $198.2$ $.818 \text{ ms} (1/16),$ $93.636 \text{ ms} (1/16),$ $187.2^{\circ}$ $.6441 \text{ ms} (1/32),$ $90.882 \text{ ms} (1/32),$ $181.7$			
Frequency		セグメント	間およびセグメント内周波数イン	ターリーブ		
Interleave	Time	I=0 (0 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols), I=8 (760 symbols), I=16 (1520 symbols)	I=0 (0 symbols), I=2 (190 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols), I=8 (760 symbols)	I=0 (0 symbols), I=1 (95 symbols), I=2 (190 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols)		
Inner	code*2	Convo	lutional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5	/6, 7/8)		
Bvte in	terleave	Convolu	tional byte interleave every	12 bytes		
Oute	r code	RS (204,188)				

Table A-2: Transmission	Signal Parameters	(7MHz Bandwidth	System)
	0	<b>`</b>	

\*1: The number of CPs represents the sum of those CPs in segments, plus one CP added to the right of the entire bandwidth.

\*2: The inner code is taken as a convolutional code in which the mother-code with a constraint length of 7 (number of states: 64) and a coding rate of 1/2 is punctured.

		Number of	Data Rates (kbit/s) *2				
Carrier	Convolutional	TSPs transmitted *1	Guard	Guard	Guard	Guard	
modulation	code	(Mode $1/2/3$ )	interval ratio 1/4	interval ratio 1/8	interval ratio 1/16	interval ratio 1/32	
	1/2	12 / 24 / 48	327.66	364.07	385.49	397.17	
DQPSK	2/3	16 / 32 / 64	436.89	485.43	513.99	529.56	
	3/4	18 / 36 / 72	491.50	546.11	578.23	595.76	
QPSK	5/6	20 / 40 / 80	546.11	606.79	642.48	661.95	
	7/8	21 / 42 / 84	573.42	637.13	674.61	695.05	
	1/2	24 / 48 / 96	655.33	728.15	770.98	794.34	
	2/3	32 / 64 / 128	873.78	970.87	1027.98	1059.13	
16QAM	3/4	36 / 72 / 144	983.00	1092.22	1156.47	1191.52	
	5/6	40 / 80 / 160	1092.22	1213.58	1284.97	1323.91	
	7/8	42 / 84 / 168	1146.84	1274.26	1349.22	1390.11	
	1/2	36 / 72 / 144	983.00	1092.22	1156.47	1191.52	
64QAM	2/3	48 / 96 / 192	1310.67	1456.30	1541.97	1588.69	
	3/4	54 / 108 / 216	1474.50	1638.34	1734.71	1787.28	
	5/6	60 / 120 / 240	1638.34	1820.38	1927.46	1985.87	
	7/8	63 / 126 / 252	1720.26	1911.40	2023.83	2085.16	

Table A-3: Data Rate per a Single Segment (7MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: Represents the number of TSPs transmitted per frame

\*2: Represents the data rate (bits) per segment for transmission parameters Data rate (bits): Number of TSPs transmitted × 188 (bytes/TSP) × 8 (bits/byte) × (1/frame length)

		Number of TSPs	Data Rates (Mbit/s)				
Carrier	Convolutional	transmitted	Guard	Guard	Guard	Guard	
modulation	code	(Mode 1/2/3)	interval ratio	interval ratio	interval ratio	interval ratio	
		(	1/4	1/8	1/16	1/32	
	1/2	156/ 312 / 624	4.259	4.732	5.011	5.163	
DQPSK	2/3	208 / 416 / 832	5.679	6.310	6.681	6.884	
	3/4	234 / 468 / 936	6.389	7.099	7.517	7.744	
QPSK 5/6		260 / 520 / 1040	7.099	7.888	8.352	8.605	
	7/8	273 / 546 / 1092	7.454	8.282	8.769	9.035	
	1/2	312 / 624 / 1248	8.519	9.465	10.022	10.326	
	2/3	416/ 832 / 1664	11.359	12.621	13.363	13.768	
16QAM	3/4	468 / 936 / 1872	12.779	14.198	15.034	15.489	
	5/6	520/ 1040 / 2080	14.198	15.776	16.704	17.210	
	7/8	546/ 1092 / 2184	14.908	16.565	17.539	18.071	
	1/2	468 / 936 / 1872	12.779	14.198	15.034	15.489	
64QAM	2/3	624 / 1248 / 2496	17.038	18.931	20.045	20.653	
	3/4	702 / 1404 / 2808	19.168	21.298	22.551	23.234	
	5/6	780 / 1560 / 3120	21.298	23.664	25.057	25.816	
	7/8	819 / 1638 / 3276	22.363	24.848	26.309	27.107	

Table A-4: Total Data Rate<sup>\*1</sup> (7MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: This table shows an example of the total data rate in which the same parameters are specified for all 13 segments.

Note that the total data rate during hierarchical transmission varies depending on the hierarchical parameter configuration. In the case shown above, the data volume transmitted by all 13 segments is equal to the sum of all data volumes transmitted by these segments that can be determined based on Table A-3.

Mode		Mode 1		Mode 2		Mode 3		
Segment bandwidth (Bws)		8000/14 = 571.428… kHz						
Spac carrie	ings between er frequencies (Cs)	Bws = 5.291	/108 … kHz	Bws = 2.645	/216 … kHz	Bws = 1.322	Bws/432 = 1.322… kHz	
s	Total count	108	108	216	216	432	432	
rieı	Data	96	96	192	192	384	384	
car	$SP^{*1}$	9	0	18	0	36	0	
of	$CP^{*1}$	0	1	0	1	0	1	
ber	$TMCC^{*2}$	1	5	2	10	4	20	
nm	AC1*3	2	2	4	4	8	8	
Z	AC2*3	0	4	0	9	0	19	
Carrier modulation scheme		QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	QPSK 16QAM 64QAM	DQPSK	
Symbols per frame		204						
Effective symbol length		189 μs		378 μs		756	756 µs	
Guard interval		47.25 μs (1/4), 23.625 μs (1/8), 11.8125 μs (1/16), 5.90625 μs (1/32)		94.5 μs (1/4), 47.25 μs (1/8), 23.625 μs (1/16), 11.8125 μs (1/32)		189 μs (1/4), 94.5 μs (1/8), 47.25 μs (1/16), 23.625 μs (1/32)		
Syı	$\begin{array}{c} 236.25 \ \mu \text{s} \ (1/4) \\ 212.625 \ \mu \text{s} \ (1/4) \\ 200.8125 \ \mu \text{s} \ (1/4) \\ 200.8125 \ \mu \text{s} \ (1/4) \\ 194.90625 \ \mu \text{s} \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4) \ (1/4)$		μs (1/4), μs (1/8), μs (1/16), 5 μs (1/32)	472.5 μs (1/4), 425.25 μs (1/8), 401.625 μs (1/16), 389.8125 μs (1/32)		945 μs (1/4), 850.5 μs (1/8), 803.25 μs (1/16), 779.625 μs (1/32)		
Frame length		48.195 ms (1/4), 43.3755 ms (1/8), 40.96575ms(1/16), 39.760875ms(1/32)		96.39 ms (1/4), 86.751 ms (1/8), 81.9315 ms (1/16), 79.52175 ms (1/32)		192.78 ms (1/4), 173.502 ms (1/8), 163.863 ms (1/16), 159.0435 ms (1/32)		
FF f	T sampling frequency	2048/189 = 10.835978… MHz						
I	nner code	Convolutional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6, 7/8)						
C	Outer code	RS (204,188)						

Table A-5: ODFM Segment Parameters	(8MHz Bandwidth System)
------------------------------------	-------------------------

\*1: SP (Scattered Pilot) and CP (Continual Pilot) are used by the receiver for synchronization and demodulation purposes.

\*2: TMCC (Transmission and Multiplexing Configuration Control) is control information.

\*3: AC (Auxiliary Channel) is used to transmit additional information for broadcasting. AC1 is available in an equal number in all segments, while AC2 is available only in differential modulated segments.

М	ode	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3					
Number segme	of OFDM ents (N <sub>s</sub> )		13	<u>.</u>					
Band (I	lwidth 3w)	$Bws \times N_s + Cs = 7.433 \cdots MHz$	$\begin{array}{l} Bws \times N_s + Cs \\ = 7.429 \cdots MHz \end{array}$						
Number of differential	segments of modulations		$\mathbf{n}_{d}$						
Number of coherent r	segments of nodulations		$n_s$ ( $n_s+n_d=N_s$ )						
Spacings be frequ (	tween carrier iencies Cs)	Bws/108 = 5.291… kHz	Bws/216 = 2.645… kHz	Bws/432 = 1.322… kHz					
s	Total count	$108 \times N_s + 1 = 1405$	$216 \times N_s + 1 = 2809$	$432 \times N_s + 1 = 5617$					
rier	Data	$96 \times N_s = 1248$	$192 \times N_s = 2496$	$384 \times N_s = 4992$					
car	SP	9×ns	18×ns	36×ns					
of	$CP^{*1}$	nd + 1	nd + 1	nd + 1					
ber	TMCC	$n_s + 5 \times n_d$	$2 \times n_s + 10 \times n_d$	$4 \times n_s + 20 \times n_d$					
mu	AC1	2×Ns= 26	4×N₅= 52	8×Ns= 104					
Z	AC2	4×nd	9×nd	19×nd					
Carrier r sch	nodulation neme	QP	QPSK, 16QAM, 64QAM, DQPSK						
Symbols	per frame	204							
Effective sy	ymbol length	189 μs	378 μs	756 μs					
Guard	interval	47.25 μs (1/4), 23.625 μs (1/8), 11.8125 μs (1/16), 5.90625 μs (1/32)	94.5 μs (1/4), 47.25 μs (1/8), 23.625 μs (1/16), 11.8125 μs (1/32)	189 μs (1/4), 94.5 μs (1/8), 47.25 μs (1/16), 23.625 μs (1/32)					
Symbo	ol length	236.25 μs (1/4), 212.625 μs (1/8), 200.8125 μs (1/16), 194.90625 μs (1/32)	472.5 μs (1/4), 425.25 μs (1/8), 401.625 μs (1/16), 389.8125 μs (1/32)	945 μs (1/4), 850.5 μs (1/8), 803.25 μs (1/16), 779.625 μs (1/32)					
Frame length		$\begin{array}{c} 48.195 \ \mathrm{ms} \ (1/4), \\ 43.3755 \ \mathrm{ms} \ (1/8), \\ 40.96575 \ \mathrm{ms} (1/16), \\ 39.760875 \ \mathrm{ms} (1/32) \end{array}$	96.39 ms (1/4), 86.751 ms (1/8), 81.9315 ms (1/16), 79.52175 ms (1/32)	192.78 ms (1/4), 173.502 ms (1/8), 163.863 ms (1/16), 159.0435 ms (1/32)					
	Frequency	Inter-segmen	t and intra-segment freque	ncy interleave					
Interleave Time		I=0 (0 symbols), I=4 (380 symbols), I=8 (760 symbols), I=16 (1520 symbols)	Image: Segment and mera segment nequency ifI=0 (0 symbols),I=4 (380 symbols),I=8 (760 symbols),I=16 (1520 symbols),I=16 (1520 symbols),						
Inner	code *2	Convol	utional code (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5	6/6, 7/8)					
Bvte in	nterleave	Convolut	tional byte interleave every	12 bytes					
Oute	er code	RS (204,188)							

## Table A-6: Transmission Signal Parameters (8MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: The number of CPs represents the sum of those CPs in segments, plus one CP added to the right of the entire bandwidth.

\*2: The inner code is taken as a convolutional code in which the mother-code with a constraint length of 7 (number of states: 64) and a coding rate of 1/2 is punctured.

		Number of	Data Rates (kbit/s) *2							
Carrier	Convolutional	TSPs	Guard	Guard	Guard	Guard				
modulation	code	(Mode 1/2/3)	interval ratio	interval ratio	interval ratio	interval ratio				
			1/1	1/0	1/10	1/02				
	1/2	12/24/48	374.47	416.08	440.56	453.91				
DQPSK	2/3	16/ 32 / 64	499.30	554.78	587.41	605.21				
	3/4	18/ 36 / 72	561.71	624.13	660.84	680.87				
QPSK	5/6	20/ 40 / 80	624.13	693.47	734.27	756.52				
	7/8	21/ 42 / 84	655.33	728.15	770.98	794.34				
	1/2	24/ 48 / 96	748.95	832.17	881.12	907.82				
	2/3	32/ 64 / 128	998.60	1109.56	1174.83	1210.43				
16QAM	3/4	36/ 72 / 144	1123.43	1248.26	1321.68	1361.74				
	5/6	40/ 80 / 160	1248.26	1386.95	1468.54	1513.04				
	7/8	42/ 84 / 168	1310.67	1456.30	1541.97	1588.69				
	1/2	36/ 72 / 144	1123.43	1248.26	1321.68	1361.74				
	2/3	48/ 96 / 192	1497.91	1664.34	1762.25	1815.65				
64QAM	3/4	54/ 108 / 216	1685.15	1872.39	1982.53	2042.61				
	5/6	60/ 120 / 240	1872.39	2080.43	2202.81	2269.56				
	7/8	63/ 126 / 252	1966.01	2184.45	2312.95	2383.04				

Table A-7: Data Rate per a Single Segment (8MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: Represents the number of TSPs transmitted per frame

\*2: Represents the data rate (bits) per segment for transmission parameters Data rate (bits): Number of TSPs transmitted × 188 (bytes/TSP) × 8 (bits/byte) × (1/frame length)

		Number of TSPs	Data Rate(Mbit/s)							
Carrier modulation	Convolutional code	transmitted	Guard interval ratio	Guard interval ratio	Guard interval ratio	Guard interval ratio				
		(Mode 1/2/3)	1/4	1/8	1/16	1/32				
	1/2	156/ 312 / 624	4.868	5.409	5.727	5.900				
DQPSK	2/3	208 / 416 / 832	6.490	7.212	7.636	7.867				
	3/4	234 / 468 / 936	7.302	8.113	8.590	8.851				
QPSK	5/6	260 / 520 / 1040	8.113	9.015	9.545	9.834				
	7/8	273 / 546 / 1092	8.519	9.465	10.022	10.326				
	1/2	312 / 624 / 1248	9.736	10.818	11.454	11.801				
	2/3	416/ 832 / 1664	12.981	14.424	15.272	15.735				
16QAM	3/4	468 / 936 / 1872	14.604	16.227	17.181	17.702				
	5/6	520/ 1040 / 2080	16.227	18.030	19.091	19.669				
	7/8	546/ 1092 / 2184	17.038	18.931	20.045	20.653				
	1/2	468 / 936 / 1872	14.604	16.227	17.181	17.702				
	2/3	624 / 1248 / 2496	19.472	21.636	22.909	23.603				
64QAM	3/4	702 / 1404 / 2808	21.907	24.341	25.772	26.553				
	5/6	780 / 1560 / 3120	24.341	27.045	28.636	29.504				
	7/8	819 / 1638 / 3276	25.558	28.397	30.068	30.979				

Table A-8: Total Data Rate<sup>\*1</sup> (8MHz Bandwidth System)

\*1: This table shows an example of the total data rate in which the same parameters are specified for all 13 segments.

Note that the total data rate during hierarchical transmission varies depending on the hierarchical parameter configuration. In the case shown above, the data volume transmitted by all 13 segments is equal to the sum of all data volumes transmitted by these segments that can be determined based on Table A-7.

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

<Blank Page>

# Attachment

# Operational Guidelines for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting

# Attachment: Operational Guidelines for Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting

## Contents

Chapter 1: C	Dbjective	91
Chapter 2: 7	Transmission-Spectrum Arrangement	92
2.1 OF	DM carrier number corresponding to the ISDB-T center frequency	92
2.2 Fre	quency assignment	92
Chapter 3: C	Operational Guidelines for Hierarchical Transmission	93
3.1 Out	line	93
3.2 Mu	ltiplexed signals for hierarchical transmission	94
3.2.1	Multiplexing PAT, NIT, and CAT for hierarchical transmission	94
3.2.2	Notes on multiplexing transmission	95
3.2.3	Multiplexing PMT	95
3.2.4	Multiplexing PCR packets at the partial-reception hierarchical layer	97
3.3 Cha	annel-coding scheme for hierarchical transmission	100
3.4 Vid	eo coding scheme	.104
3.4.1	Constraints of video coding parameter	.104
3.4.2	Constraints of still picture coding parameter	.104
Chapter 4: C	Buidelines for Synchronization	106
4.1 Syn	chronization for SFN	106
4.1.1	Transmission frequency	106
4.1.2	IFFT sampling frequency	106
4.1.3	OFDM signals	. 106
Chapter 5: S	Signal Transmission Scheme to STL/TTL	107
5.1 Typ	bes of interface point	.107
5.2 Typ	es of synchronization scheme	108
5.2.1	Complete synchronization	108
5.2.2	Slave synchronization	108
5.2.3	Reference synchronization	108
5.2.4	Synchronization conversion (Quasi-synchronization)	108
5.3 Ass	umed broadcasting network types	. 110
5.3.1	Network construction without having to consider SFN conditions	. 111
5.3.2	Network operation necessary to consider the SFN condition	. 112
5.4 Usa	age examples of synchronization method considering SFN	. 113
5.4.1	Interface point and synchronization method when considering SFN	. 113
5.4.2	Usage examples of synchronization method corresponding to the broadcasting network	. 114
5.5 Add	litional information necessary for re-multiplexing TS transmission	. 116
5.5.1	Types of additional information	. 116
5.5.2	Multiplex to dummy byte part	. 117

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

5.5.3	Multiplex to invalid hierarchy IIP (ISDB-T_Information_Packet)	
Chapter 6: (	Operational guidelines for AC data transmission	
6.1 Det	ermination of broadcasting TS multiplex positions	
6.2 Mu	ltiplexing on dummy byte part	
6.2.1	Multiplex position	
6.2.2	Syntax for multiplexing AC data on dummy byte part	
6.2.3	Mapping of AC data to OFDM carriers	
6.2.3	B.1 Timing of multiplexing AC data in relation to OFDM frames	
6.2.3	B.2 Order of mapping to OFDM carriers	
6.3 Mu	ltiplexing on invalid hierarchy	
6.3.1	Multiplex position	131
6.3.2	Syntax for multiplexing AC data on invalid hierarchy	
6.3.3	Data arrangement on multiplex frames and TS packets	133
6.3.4	Mapping to OFDM carriers	
6.3.4	1.1 Timing of multiplexing AC data in relation to OFDM frames	
6.3.4	1.2 Procedure of mapping to OFDM carriers	
6.4 Cor	nsiderations in multiplexing AC data to broadcasting TS	136
6.4.1	Considerations in the order of AC data carriers	136
6.4.2	Considerations in the timing of multiplexing on dummy bytes	136

# **Chapter 1: Objective**

This attachment presents operational guidelines as recommendations for digital terrestrial television broadcasting in relation to program broadcasting and transmission equipment.

# **Chapter 2: Transmission-Spectrum Arrangement**

# 2.1 **OFDM carrier number corresponding to the ISDB-T center frequency**

As shown in Chapter 4 of this document, the ministerial ordinance stipulates that the carrier-wave frequency must be the center frequency of the frequency bandwidth.

Because ISDB-T program signals consist of an odd number of OFDM carriers regardless of the mode, the following numbers must be assigned to the OFDM carrier that corresponds to the carrier frequency.

Table 2-1. OFDM Carrie	r Number	Corresponding	to the	Carrier Fre	allency
		Conceptioning		Carrierite	queney

Transmission mode	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3
Carrier number corresponding to the center frequency	702	1404	2808

OFDM carrier number when 0 is assigned to the lowermost carrier along the RF frequency axis

# 2.2 Frequency assignment

The ISDB-T program-signal carrier frequency must be shifted upward by 1/7 MHz (142,857 Hz) from the center frequency used in the current Television-channel plan.

Table 2-2: UHF Channels and ISDB-T Program-Signal Carrier Frequencies

Number of UHF channels	Channel 13	Channel 14	 Channel 52
Carrier frequency	473 + 1/7 MHz = 473.142857MHz	479 + 1/7 MHz = 479.142857MHz	 707 + 1/7 MHz = 707.142857MHz



Fig. 2-1: An Example of OFDM Signal Arrangement

# **Chapter 3: Operational Guidelines for Hierarchical Transmission**

# 3.1 Outline

ISDB-T allows switching between transmission systems and the use of multiple such systems. This allows the stable transmission of program signals to mobile receivers, portable receivers, and stationary receivers in exchange for large-volume transmission.

For example, when 64QAM and 7/8 are selected as the modulation scheme and error correction, respectively, it is possible to achieve a transmission capacity of 20 Mbps or more per 6 MHz. However, in order to provide service to mobile receivers and portable receivers, we believe that hierarchical transmission, in which DQPSK or 16QAM is employed as the modulation scheme for part of the bandwidth, is advantageous.



The figures shown above are conceptual drawings made without taking frequency interleaving into consideration.

Fig. 3-1: An Example of a Hierarchical Transmission System

# 3.2 Multiplexed signals for hierarchical transmission

## 3.2.1 Multiplexing PAT, NIT, and CAT for hierarchical transmission

PAT, NIT, and CAT, among transmission control signals, shall be basically transmitted with the hierarchical layers shown in Table 3-1.

Table 3-1: Hierarchical Layers for Transmitting PAT, NIT, and CAT

	Condition	Hierarchical layer for transmitting PAT, NIT, and $CAT^{*1}$				
1	Broadcasting with no partial reception	Multiplexed into the robustest layer <sup>*2</sup>				
		(1) Multiplexed into the layer for partial reception <sup>*2</sup>				
2	Broadcasting with partial reception	(2) Multiplexed into not only the layer for partial reception but also another layer if this layer is robuster than the layer for partial reception <sup>*2</sup>				

\*1: CAT is required for partial reception.

\*2: If the transmission in the hierarchical layers shown above is difficult, exceptional operations are also admitted. In this case, however, detailed operational provisions shall be set separately to ensure that services in each layer will be received successfully.

Ranking of	S	Stron	g ← -															$\cdots \rightarrow$	Weal	k
hierarchical layers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
Modulation scheme	DQ	Q	DQ	Q	DQ	Q	DQ	Q	DQ	Q		1	6QAI	М			6	4QA	М	
Inner-code coding rate	1/2	1/2	2/3	2/3	3/4	3/4	5/6	5/6	7/8	7/8	1/2	2/3	3/4	5/6	7/8	1/2	2/3	3/4	5/6	7/8
DO.		ΠΩΡ	SK																	

Table 3-2: Robustness of Hierarchical Layers

DQ: DQPSK Q: QPSK

QPSK is preferable to DQPSK in terms of the required C/N. However, DQPSK offers better performance in the event of time variations under mobile-reception conditions. Therefore, DQPSK is robuster than QPSK.

#### 3.2.2 Notes on multiplexing transmission

When transmission control signals are transmitted with multiple hierarchical layers, including those for partial reception, the continuity of the continuity\_counter for transport-stream packets conveying transmission control signals must be taken into consideration.

Because this counter is continuous even for narrow-band receivers that reproduce only the hierarchical layer for partial reception, duplicate packets must be used<sup>\*1</sup>.

For this reason, when transmission control signals are multiplexed into multiple hierarchical layers, as in "Condition 2 (2)" of Table 3-1, duplicate packet transmission must be used. Note, however, that if different time interleaving lengths are specified for the partial-reception hierarchical layer and the robustest hierarchical layer, it is necessary to exercise caution when duplicate packet transmission is used.

\*1: A duplicate packet, as defined in "MPEG-2 systems," is designed to send two TSPs (transport packets) successively within the same PID. Note that the contents of these TSPs other than PCR are the same within the transport stream. Note also that the contents of the continuity counter are the same for both of these TSPs.

#### 3.2.3 Multiplexing PMT

PMT must be transmitted with the following hierarchical layers:

	Condition	Hierarchical layer for transmitting PAT
1	Partial-reception service	Transmitted with the hierarchical layer for partial reception
2	When a hierarchical transmission descriptor is used within PMT <sup>*1</sup>	PMT should be transmitted at the robustest layer among those transmitting elementary streams (hereinafter referred to as "ESs"). However, PMT may be transmitted with the other hierarchical layer if it has robuster ranking of the layer than the layer specified above.
3	Service other than the above	PMT should be transmitted with one of the hierarchical layers transmitting ESs. It may also be transmitted with another hierarchical layer if it has robuster ranking of the layer.

Table 3-3: Hierarchical Layers for Transmitting PMT

\*1: Services such as those in which video and other service qualities are changed in steps, in accordance with the reception status

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

As for Condition 1, the partial-reception service PMT should always be transmitted with the hierarchical layer for partial reception. This requirement must be met for narrow-band receivers that receive only the hierarchical layer for partial reception. Therefore, PMT must be transmitted with this hierarchical layer.

With those services presented as Condition 2, in which service qualities can be changed in steps in accordance with the reception status through the use of the hierarchical transmission descriptor which is used in PMT, it is necessary to ensure that PMT can be received even under adverse reception conditions in which service qualities may be degraded. For this reason, we have concluded that the one with robuster of those layers transmitting ESs, or another layer that has even robuster must be used to transmit PMT. For example, if there are service ESs in the weakest hierarchical layer and the medium hierarchical layer, as with Combination "a" in Table 3-4, PMT must be transmitted with either the medium layer or the robustest layer.

In Condition 3, a service can be provided only when all service-multiplexed ESs are received. In this case, PMT should not be sent with a weaker hierarchical layer than ES-transmission hierarchical layers. As with Combination "j" in Table 3-4, for example, when service ESs are included in the medium layer and the robustest layer, transmission of PMT using the weakest hierarchical layer can make it impossible to receive that service, depending on the reception status, even if all ESs are successfully received.

Condition	Combination	ES-transm	ission hierard	chical layer	PMT-transmission hierarchical layer				
Condition	Combination	Weakest	Medium	Robustest	Weakest	Medium	Robustest		
	а	•	•			•	•		
$2^{*2}$	b	•		•			•		
	с		•	•			•		
	d	•			•	•	•		
	е		•			•	•		
	f	•	•		•	•	•		
3	g			•			•		
	h	•		•	•	•	•		
	i		•	•		•	•		
	j	•	•	•	•	•	•		

Table 3-4: ES- and PMT-Transmission Hierarchical Layers<sup>\*1</sup>

\*1: With provisional digital terrestrial television broadcasting, up to three hierarchical layers can be transmitted. These layers are classified into three groups, "Weakest," "Medium," and "Robustest".

\*2: A hierarchical transmission descriptor can be used in up to two hierarchical layers.
## 3.2.4 Multiplexing PCR packets at the partial-reception hierarchical layer

When a service is provided using the partial-reception hierarchical layer, PCR packets for this service must be transmitted in accordance with Table 3-5.

To reduce power consumption, the rate at which a single-segment receiver reproduces TS is likely to be lower than that for a 13-segment receiver. Therefore, the intervals at which TS packets are reproduced by the single-segment receiver do not always match those at which TS packets at the partial-reception hierarchical layer are reproduced by the 13-segment receiver, resulting in PCR jitter (see Fig. 3-2).

To prevent this problem, limitations are imposed on PCR transmission as shown in Table 3-5. These limitations ensure that PCR packets are reproduced by single- and 13-segment receivers at equal intervals, thus eliminating the need for a PCR jitter correction step, although some difference in offset is produced.

TADIE J-J. NEQUIALIUTS TUT FUN-FACKEL TTATISTITISSIUT AL LITE FATLIAI-NECEPLIUT FITETATUTICAI LAVET
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Mode	PCR-packet transmission regulations
Mode 1	For the duration of a single multiplex frame, only one PCR packet must be multiplexed per service, and the multiplexing position must remain constant for all multiplex frames (see Fig. 3-3).
Mode 2	For the duration of a single multiplex frame, two PCR packets must be multiplexed per service at the same intervals (see Fig. 3-4).
Mode 3	For the duration of a single multiplex frame, four PCR packets must be multiplexed per service at the same intervals (see Fig. 3-5).















Fig. 3-5: PCR-Packet Transmission in Mode 3

\*1 "Same pattern" in the figures indicates that each PCR packet is arranged in the same relative position within the stream.

## 3.3 Channel-coding scheme for hierarchical transmission

TS is divided into TSPs, each of which is assigned to the specified hierarchical layer, as described in Section 3.4 of Chapter 3 in ARIB STD-B31. Switching between hierarchical layers is performed every 204 bytes (starting with the byte next to the TS synchronization byte (47H)).

The following Fig. 3-6 and 3-7 show examples of the clock periods required by the channel coding in which two hierarchical layers are available (one layer modulated through DQPSK 1/2 and with 5 segments, and the other modulated through 64QAM 7/8 and with 8 segments) and a guard interval of 1/8 is selected. Note that "Fs" in the figure represents the FFT sampling clock. Figs. 3-8 and 3-9 show examples of the signal processes for time interleaving and delay adjustment.



Fig. 3-6: An Example of a Signal Transmission System (1)

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1



Fig. 3-7: An Example of a Signal Transmission System (2)



ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

(Hierarchical layer A: DQPSK, convolutional-coding rate of 1/2, 5 segments, I = 16)

(Hierarchical layer B: 64QAM, convolutional-coding rate of 7/8, 8 segments, I = 8)

Fig. 3-8: Time Interleaving and Delay Adjustment (Example of Processing on the Transmitting Side)



(Hierarchical layer A: DQPSK, convolutional-coding rate of 1/2, 5 segments, I = 16) (Hierarchical layer B: 64QAM, convolutional-coding rate of 7/8, 8 segments, I = 8)

Fig. 3-9: Time Interleaving and Delay Adjustment (Example of Processing on the Receiving Side)

## 3.4 Video coding scheme

In the case of hierarchical transmission with multiple layers, it is possible to transmit services whose video coding scheme is conformed to the MPEG-2 Video (ITU-T Rec. H.262, ISO/IEC 13818-2) with the constraints shown below in addition to television services specified in the ARIB STD-B32 standard. Selection of each coding parameter should be made by the judgment of each broadcasting provider considering picture quality, required bit rate and reception quality, etc.

## 3.4.1 Constraints of video coding parameter

Table 3-6 shows constraints of video coding parameter.

Constraints of sequence_header				Constraints of sequence_ extension	Constraints of sequence_display_extension			Other parameters
vertical_ size_ value	horizontal_ size_value	aspect_ ratio_ information	frame_ rate_ code	progressive_ sequence	color_ primaries	transfer_ characteristics	matrix_ coefficients	
240	352	2, 3	4 <sup>(Note2)</sup>	1	1	1	1	Value specified for MP@LL

## Table 3-6: Constraints of video coding parameter

(Note 1) In the MPEG-2 coding scheme, 128 lines are coded actually.

(Note 2) When transmittable bit rate is extremely low, encoding method that does not change the frame\_rate\_code and lowering the actual coded frame rate by using skipped macroblock, etc. is also effective.

## 3.4.2 Constraints of still picture coding parameter

Table3-7 shows constraints of coding parameter in still picture. One frame of still picture is coded as I frame and transmitted by surrounding it with sequence\_header\_code and sequence\_end\_code, as an independent sequence.

Constraints of sequence_header			Constraints of sequence_extension		Constraints of sequence_display_extension			Other parameters (Note 5)	
vertical_ size_ value	horizontal_ size_ value	aspect_ ratio_ information	frame_ rate_ code <sup>(Note 2)</sup>	progressive_ sequence	low_ delay	color_ primaries	transfer_ characteristics	matrix_ coefficients	
1080 (Note 1)	1440, 1920	3	4	0 <sup>(Note 3)</sup>					Value specified for MP@HL
190	790	3	7	1	1 (Note 4)	1	1	1	Value specified for MP@H14L
400	720	2, 3	4	0 <sup>(Note 3)</sup>	Tarote i	1		I	Value specified for MP@ML
240	352	2, 3	4	1					Value specified for MP@LL

(Note 1) In the MPEG-2 coding scheme, 1088 lines are coded actually.

- (Note 2) Timing of decoding and display is controlled by time stamp value in the PES header, and the value of vbv\_delay should be 0xFFFF.
- (Note 3) In the case of progressive\_frame=0 (with timing difference due to interlaced scanning of the two fields in a frame), display of a freeze field is recommended and in the case of progressive\_frame=1 (same timing in the two fields in a frame) display of a freeze frame is recommended.
- (Note 4) In the case of low\_delay=1, time stamps of decoding and display are the same value (DTS=PTS). Only PTS is attached in the still picture coded as I frame.
- (Note 5) For values of vbv\_buffer\_size\_value, etc., values specified in ISO/IEC 13818-2 for each level of the Main Profile should be adopted. However, bti\_rate\_value should be the maximum value of each level and MP@LL should be 4Mbps, MP@ML should be 15Mbps, and values for MP@H14L and MP@HL should be the maximum capacity that can be transmitted by digital terrestrial broadcasting.

Table 3-8 shows meaning of each code number of the MPEG-2 coding parameter shown in Tables 3-6 and 3-7.

aspect_ratio_information	2 = 4:3 display	3 = 16:9 display		
frame_rate_code	4 = 30/1.001  Hz	7 = 60/1.001  Hz		
progressive_sequence	0 = Interlaced	1 = Progressive		
low_delay	1 = Not including B	picture		
color_primaries	1 = Nominal value	of Rec.ITU-R BT.709(BT.1361)		
transfer_characteristics	1 = Nominal value	1 = Nominal value of Rec.ITU-R BT.709(BT.1361)		
matrix_coefficients	1 = Nominal value	of Rec.ITU-R BT.709(BT.1361)		

Table 3-8: Meaning of each code number of MPEG-2 coding parameter

# Chapter 4: Guidelines for Synchronization

## 4.1 Synchronization for SFN

To implement SFN, the following requirements must be met in order to establish synchronism between broadcast waves:

## 4.1.1 Transmission frequency

To prevent interference between carriers within the SFN service area, the variations in the transmission frequency of each broadcast wave must be 1 Hz or less.

### 4.1.2 IFFT sampling frequency

To implement SFN by means of OFDM signals generated by different IFFT sample clocks, as when multiple OFDM modulators are used, all IFFT sample-clock frequencies must be identical.

If one of the frequencies differs from the others, the difference affects the OFDM symbol period, that is, symbol speed. Consequently, a symbol shift beyond the guard interval length is produced between OFDM signals, causing interference between symbols.

Note also that the frequency of each of the uppermost and lowermost carriers of the frequency band must not vary any more than 1 Hz as a result of variations in the sample frequency.

### 4.1.3 OFDM signals

When multiple OFDM modulators are used, the output OFDM-signal waveforms must be the same at all SFN stations.

Note that it is preferable to select transmission timing such that the difference in delay time within the service area is shorter than the guard interval.

# **Chapter 5: Signal Transmission Scheme to STL/TTL**

This chapter specifies the signal format and synchronization establishment scheme to transmit the digital terrestrial television broadcast signal to STL.

The signal transmission method among broadcasting stations is also specified for the network configuration including SFN.

## 5.1 Types of interface point

Interface points are indicated in the figures as shown below.

and having multiplexed frame construction.



- TS (1) The TS signal in accordance with the MPEG-2 systems, which does not have the multiplexed frame construction of digital terrestrial television signal. Hereinafter referred to as usual TS.
- TS (2) The TS signal in accordance with the MPEG-2 systems, which has the multiplexed frame construction of digital terrestrial television signal. Hereinafter referred to as broadcasting TS.
   The signal after TS re-multiplexing is specified in Chapter 3 clause 3.2 in this document

Fig. 5-1: Types of interface point

## 5.2 Types of synchronization scheme

Among the interface points defined in clause 5.1, the signal format is TS signal in I/F (1) and I/F (2). Therefore, the IFFT sample frequency should be synchronized with the studio and the broadcasting station or among the broadcasting stations.

Relay method	Interface point	Interface signal		Note
Broadcast wave relay	RF	OFDM signal	Unnecessary	
	I/F (3)	_	Only RF synchronization	
	I/F (2)		Slave synchronization	
		Broadcasting TS	Synchronization conversion	Quasi- synchronization – equipment required
			Complete synchronization	Clock should be returned
SIL/IIL			Reference synchronization	Usage of JJY, GPS, etc.
			Slave synchronization	
	I/F (1)	Usual TS	Synchronization conversion	Synchronization conversion by re-multiplex device.
			Reference synchronization	Usage of JJY, GPS, etc.

Table 5-1: Interface point and synchronizing scheme

Synchronization method types are specified in this section.

## 5.2.1 Complete synchronization

Any of one modulator clock in either of the broadcasting stations should be used as a reference clock of network, and the clock of other broadcasting station or studio should synchronize to the reference clock. However, a separate link to transmit the clock should be prepared, in addition to the TS transmission link, to transmit the digital terrestrial television broadcasting signal.

## 5.2.2 Slave synchronization

The clock of modulator in each transmitting stations is synchronized to the clock of multiplexer or re-multiplexer in broadcasting studio.

For the studio clock transmission method, there is a method to synchronize with the bit clock of STL/TTL, etc.

## 5.2.3 Reference synchronization

This method synchronizes the studio and all the broadcasting stations by synchronizing with a signal other than the digital terrestrial television broadcasting network.

For the synchronizing signal, there are GPS and JJY, etc.

## 5.2.4 Synchronization conversion (Quasi-synchronization)

This synchronization conversion method is to\_write the received TS signal which is transmitted from the forward station or studio on the input buffer temporary, and read out this TS signal by the clock signal of following station, which is asynchronous to the forward station or studio.

ATS signal from the forward\_station is transmitted by inserting more than a specific null TSP,

and this TSP signal can be inserted and deleted at the following station to obtain the synchronization conversion.

However, as up to three hierarchical layers can be transmitted as a layer transmission in the digital terrestrial television broadcasting, the synchronization conversion device is necessary in each layer, in the case of the layer transmission. But, the re-multiplexer written in Fig. 5-1 has an equivalent function of synchronization conversion, therefore, in case of interface I/F(1), re-multiplexer can be substituted for synchronization conversion function.

In case of the SFN operation, the OFDM signals must be same at all SFN stations, but, in this method, transmitting signal may be changed by adding/deleting the null packets therefore, this method is not appropriate as a synchronizing method among the broadcasting stations for the SFN operation.

## 5.3 Assumed broadcasting network types

As specified in the Attachment Chapter 4 "Guidelines for Synchronization" the following conditions should be satisfied for SFN operation.

- (1) The transmission frequency tolerance should be within 1Hz.
  - Note that in the case of relay stations to re-transmit radio waves received from other stations or in the case of extremely low power stations between two or more stations configured as SFN in the same broadcasting service area, the relative transmission frequency tolerance between broadcasting stations should be within 10Hz, while satisfying the specified tolerance.
- (2) The IFFT sampling clock should coincide averagely and the frequency tolerance between each transmission-band edge carriers due to frequency drift of IFFT sample clock should be within +/-0.3ppm.
- (3) The multiplexed frames should be the same. (The TS (2) in Fig. 5-1 should coincide.)
- (4) The delay time difference of the OFDM frame synchronization signal phase (including even number (W0), odd number (W1) frame synchronization signal phase) should be positioned within the guard interval period at the SFN interference area.

On the other hand, when the frequency differs from that of other broadcasting stations, or when the frequency is the same but the broadcasting area does not overlap geographically, (hereinafter, referred to as MFN) the condition should be as follows.

- The transmission frequency tolerance should be within 500Hz, provided the Minister of Internal Affairs, Posts and Communications has agreed that it does not obstruct the effective radio wave usage excessively. Note that in the case of relaying only broadcasting programs from other stations, the tolerance is mitigated to 3kHz, 10kHz or 20kHz in response to antenna power.
- (2) The frequency tolerance between transmission-band edge carriers due to the frequency drift of the IFFT sample clock should be within +/-0.3ppm.
- (3) It is not necessary for the multiplexed frames to be identical.
- (4) The sending timing of the OFDM frame synchronization phase (including TMCC frame synchronization phase) does not have to be specified. For (3), it means that TS (2) do not necessarily have to be identical as long as the receiver unit can decode without contradiction.

As the required specification of the sending interface condition and synchronizing method differs according to whether the SFN is assumed or not in the broadcasting network, the broadcasting network is modeled depending on whether it is SFN or MFN.



Fig. 5-2: Construction of broadcasting network and combination with SFN

- 5.3.1 Network construction without having to consider SFN conditions
  - (1) When transmitting signal from a studio to one broadcasting station. (Case 1)



Fig. 5-3: When transmitting signal from a studio to one broadcasting station



Fig. 5-4: When transmitting signal from a studio to plural broadcasting stations of MFN operation

(2) When the forward station and following station are in MFN operation and the entire route after the following station is MFN operation. (Case 2)



Fig. 5-5: When the entire route after the following station is MFN construction

### 5.3.2 Network operation necessary to consider the SFN condition

- (1) When transmitting the signal from a studio to multiple broadcasting stations of SFN ruction-operation.
  - (Case 3)



Fig. 5-6: When transmitting signal to a studio to plural broadcasting station of SFN operation

(2) When forming the SFN construction between the forward\_station and following station (Case 4)



Fig. 5-7: When SFN construction is formed between the forward\_station and following station

(3) When MFN construction is employed between the forward and following stations but SFN construction is employed in the route after the following station. (Case 5)



Cases when SFN construction is employed between the following station and the broadcasting stations in the other route are included.

Fig. 5-8: When SFN construction is employed in the routes after the following station

 (4) Cases when MFN construction is employed between the forward and following station but SFN construction is employed after both the forward and following stations. (Cases 6)



Fig. 5-9: When SFN construction is employed after both the forward and following stations

## 5.4 Usage examples of synchronization method considering SFN

For cases 3 to 6 in clause 5.3.2 in the network construction shown in clause 5.3, consideration of SFN condition for the synchronization method is necessary.

This clause discusses usage examples of synchronization method applicable to the network construction, in which consideration of SFN is necessary.

#### 5.4.1 Interface point and synchronization method when considering SFN

Problems and conditions when considering SFN in the interface point and synchronization method shown in clause 5.2 are shown in Table 5-2.

No.	Interface point	Synchronization method	Problems and conditions when considering SFN		
1	RF	Unnecessary	Delay time in the SFN area cannot be controlled		
2	2 I/F (3) Only RF synchronization		For the delay time control in the SFN area, the delay time of forward transmitting station is controlled by adding the fixed delay to compensate the time delay difference between forward station and following station which is caused by TTL transmission to following station.		
3		Slave synchronization	Slave synchronization to the signal sent from forward station		
4		Synchronization conversion	The synchronization conversion process may change the multiplexed frame construction.		
5	1/F (2)	Complete synchronization	Synchronization signal delivery method should be studied separately.		
6		Reference synchronization	Entire network is synchronized by GPS and JJY, etc.		
7		Slave synchronization	Re-multiplexer should be equipped at the transmitting station,		
8	I/F (1)	Synchronization conversion	therefore, multiplexed frame construction may be changed. In addition above, a method to verify final output TS is required		
9 Reference synchronization		Reference synchronization	separately.		

Table 5-2: Interface point and synchronization method when considering SFN

As shown in the above table, I/F (1) can be applied to STL (signal delivery method to a main transmitting station, shown in clause 5.3.2 case 1) in which a loopback link is comparatively easy to secure, in the cases of MFN shown in clause 5.3.1. However, it is difficult to apply to network considering SFN.

It may be possible to apply the synchronization conversion in I/F (2) to STL, similar to the I/F(1), however, there is a problem in multiplexed frame coincidence, when considering the application to SFN. For complete synchronization, application to SFN is not practical as consideration of a synchronized signal distribution method is necessary.

## 5.4.2 Usage examples of synchronization method corresponding to the broadcasting network

For the network considering SFN as shown in clause 5.4.1, use of I/F (3) and RF broadcasting signal relay method are recommended in addition to the slave synchronization of I/F (2) and reference synchronization.

In this clause, usage examples of each synchronization method and important notice when applying to cases 3 to 6 of the broadcasting network construction shown in clause 5.3.2 are discussed.

Synch: system	ynchronization Slave synchronization ystem		Reference synchronization		
Signal	format	204 byte broadcasting TS format	204 byte broadcasting TS format		
Example of network construction		Studio Remultiploxing M SFN station modulator M M M M M M M M M M M M M	Studio Remultiplesting SFN station modulator GPS, JJY, etc. M		
Ap	RF frequency	• Frequency difference should be within 1Hz in each broadcast station	• should be within 1Hz in each broadcast station		
plication to SFN condition	IFFT sampling clock	<ul> <li>Synchronization reproduction of STL/TTL signal from the studio or forward station</li> <li>Care should be taken when using ATM line in place of STL/TTL of radio system</li> <li>In the case of cascade link connection, care should be taken for the amount of jitter generated in synchronization reproduction.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The clock synchronized with GPS or JJY should be used in the studio and each broadcast station.</li> <li>Jitter absorption should be considered when using ATM.</li> </ul>		
	Multiplexed frame	• The signal discriminating the head of the OFDM frame is added (see clause 5.5).	• The signal discriminating the top of the OFDM frame is added (see clause 5.5).		
	Sending timing	• Adjust the transmitting timing to add the fixed delay in condition that the delay of the system is constant.	• Relative delay from second pulse supplied from GPS and/or JJY is used for transmitting timing adjustment (see clause 5.5)		
	\				

## Table 5-3: Example of the interface using I/F (2)

(M): Master clock

(S): Slave clock

Synch syster	Synchronization OFDM-IF interface		Broadcasting signal relay method		
Signal format OFDM signal		OFDM signal	OFDM signal		
Example of network construction		Studio Remultiples Modulator MFN station frequency conversion MFN station frequency conversion MFN station frequency conversion MFN station frequency conversion	Studio RF signal Main station Min station Min station SFN re-transmitting station (same frequency) MFN re-transmitting station (frequency conversion)		
Applic	RF frequency	Deviation should be within 1Hz in each broadcast station	• Frequency difference should be within 1Hz in each transmitting_station by using common local signal for both transmitting and receiving portion in broadcasting signal relay station.		
ation to	IFFT sampling clock	• Not applicable as it is OFDM transmission.	• Not applicable as it is OFDM transmission.		
SFN o	Multiplexed frame	Not applicable as it is OFDM transmission.	• Not applicable as it is OFDM transmission.		
condition	Sending timing	• .Adjust the transmitting timing to add the fixed delay in condition that the delay of the system is constant.	• Delay adjustment is impossible by receiving the broadcasting wave. It is desirable to apply this system not to occur the interference for considering the relationship between distance of stations and guard interval length.		

## Table 5-4: Examples of the interface using I/F (3) and broadcasting signal relay method

Interface examples when using each synchronization method are shown in Tables 5-3 and 5-4.

Network construction can be made by combining multiple synchronized methods among the 4 types of method shown in the table. Therefore, it is recommended to select an appropriate synchronization method according to each network condition.

## 5.5 Additional information necessary for re-multiplexing TS transmission

The transmitting control information should be provided when transmitting the re-multiplexing TS using I/F (2) in which the interface is TS having multiplexed frame construction, among the interface points shown in Fig. 5-1. The types and transmission method are discussed in this clause.

## 5.5.1 Types of additional information

There are the following two types of multiple positions when multiplexing the transmitting control information to the broadcasting TS.

- (1) Multiplexed to the dummy byte part of each TSP (Transport Stream Packet).
- (2) Multiplexed as invalid hierarchical TSP (such as IIP, ISDB-T Information Packet).

Transmission is made as shown below, according to the transmission items of the transmitting control information.

			Multiplex position	
No.	Transmission item	Description	Dummy byte	Invalid hierarchy
1	TMCC ID	'00': BS digital '10': Digital terrestrial TV '11': Digital terrestrial audio	0	
2	Buffer reset flag	Synchronization device buffer reset control	0	
3	Starting control for emergency-alarm broadcasting	Designating the duration of emergency-alarm broadcast execution	0	0
4	TMCC change head packet flag	Designation of head packet to change	0	
5	Frame head packet flag	Designation of head packet of multiplexed frame	0	
6	Frame synchronization designation (w0,w1)	Designation of duration of even number or odd number frames	0	0
7	Hierarchy information of each TSP	Hierarchy discrimination of A, B, C, NULL Designation of TSP that carries IIP or that carries AC data	0	
8	Transmission parameter switching index		0	0
9	TSP counter	Multiplexed frame top packet is 0. Incremented in the order of packet.	0	
10	TMCC (including mode and GI)	TMCC and modulation device control information		0
11	Broadcasting network control information	Control information such as delay at SFN		Optional
12	AC data	Information transmitted by AC	Optional	Optional
13	Service providers' organized data	Data multiplexed to broadcasting TS independently by service providers		Optional

Table 5-5: Transmission items of the transmitting control information and multiplex position

However, for items overlapping both dummy byte and invalid hierarchy, it should be multiplexed so as not to contradict each other.

Detailed information on AC data is described in Chapter 6 in this Attachment. When the seismic motion warning information is transmitted by AC data, it must be multiplexed to dummy bytes.

### 5.5.2 Multiplex to dummy byte part

#### (1) Multiplex position

Interface signal format should be re-multiplexing TS format having multiplexed frame construction of 204 byte and should be multiplexed on 8 bytes (dummy byte part) other than information part of 188 byte, and information shown in Table 5-5 should be multiplexed.

Information part	Multiplex position	Parity (option)
<> 188 bytes>	$\in$ 8 bytes $\Rightarrow$	$\in$ 8 bytes $\rightarrow$

Fig. 5-10: Multiplex position on dummy byte

Additional information multiplexed on the above dummy byte (multiplex position) indicates the information of its TSP. The multiplexed additional information is called ISDB-T\_information.

It should be possible to add the following parity when required.

The parity should apply the shortened (204,196) Reed-Solomon code generated by adding 00HEX of 51 bytes in front of the input data bytes in the case of (255,247) Reed-Solomon code and deleting the top 51 bytes.

As for the original (255, 247) Reed-Solomon code,  $GF(2^8)$  element and the primitive polynomial defining GF(28) are as follows:

 $p(x) = x^8 + x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + 1$ 

For generator polynomial of the (255, 247) Reed-Solomon code:

 $g(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{0}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{1}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{2}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{3}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{4}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{5}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{6}) (\mathbf{x} \cdot \lambda^{7})$ 

where,  $\lambda = 02_{HEX}$ 

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

## (2) Multiplex information

Data Structure	Number of Bits	Bit String Notation
ISDB-T information(){		
TMCC identifier	2	hslhf
racarvad	- 1	bslbf
huffer reset control flag	1	helbf
switch-on control flag for amorgancy broadcasting	1	balbf
initialization timing head neekst flag	1	balbf
Initialization_timing_nead_packet_nag	1	
frame_head_packet_flag	1	bsibi
frame_indicator	1	bslbf
layer_indicator	4	bslbf
count_down_index	4	bslbf
AC_data_invalid_flag	1	bslbf
AC data effective bytes	2	bslbf
TSP counter	13	bslbf
if(AC data invalid flag==1)	-	
stuffing hit	32	hslhf
oleo{	0-	00101
AC data	32	bslbf
}		
}		
)		

# Table 5-6: Syntax of ISDB-T\_information

Byte	bit	Syntax	Description	
0	7	TMCC_identifier	= 1 Discrimination of digital torrestrial TV	
	6	(TMCC discrimination)		
	5	reserved	Should be '1'	
	4	buffer_reset_control_flag	Synchronized device buffer reset control signal	
		(Buffer reset flag)	In case of buffer reset, 1 Normally '0'	
	3	switch-on control flag for	Receiver unit start control signal in case of emergency	
	0	emergency_broadcasting	broadcasting.	
		(Start control for	During emergency broadcasting, '1'	
		emergency-alarm broadcasting)	Normally, '0'	
	2	initialization_timing_head_pac	The changed head packet is '1'. Normally, it is '0'.	
		(Changing designation)	when it returned to '1111,' the head packet of the frame is '1.'	
	1	frame_head_packet_flag	Discriminates the head of multiple frames.	
		(Frame head flag)	The multiple frame head packet is '1' regardless of even number or	
			odd number frames. Others are '0.'	
	0	frame_indicator	During even frame (w0) of the OFDM frame, it is '0.'	
		discrimination)	During out frame (w1) of the Of Divi frame, it is 1.	
1	7-4	layer_indicator	Indicates the hierarchy by which the TSP is transmitted.	
		(Hierarchy information for each	'0000': A NULL-TSP which is not transmitted by any of	
		TSP)	hierarchical layers A, B, or C.	
			'0010': TSP transmitted by hierarchical layer B	
			'0011': TSP transmitted by hierarchical layer C	
			'0010': TSP which transmits AC data but not transmitted by any	
			of hierarchical layers A, B, or C	
			organized data	
			'1000': TSP which transmits the IIP but not transmitted by any	
			of hierarchical layers A, B, or C.	
			'1001'~'1111': TSP that service providers multiplex originally	
	3-0	count down index	Transmission parameter switching index described in the TMCC	
	00	(Transmission parameter	information.	
		switching index)		
2	7	AC_data_invalid_flag	When AC data is not added to the dummy byte part: '1'	
		(AU data flag multiplexed on the dummy byte part)	When AU data is added to the dummy byte part: '0'	
	6-5	AC data effective bytes	'00': 1-byte	
		(Actual number of AC data	'01': 2-byte	
		bytes to be transmitted by	'10': 3-byte	
		broadcasting waves)	'11': 4-byte (including the case in which AC data is not added to the	
			Among bytes 4 to 7, the byte position to be used should be specified	
			by each service provider.	
	4-0	TSP_counter	A counter in which the head packet of the multiplex frame is 0 and	
		(TSP counter)	increments one by one in the order of packet.	
3	7-0		data, etc.	
4	7-0	AC data (AC data)	Area for AC data	
5	7-0	AC data (AC data)	(Is not transmitted in the case of AC data invalid flag ='1')	
0	10	no_uara (no uara)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

# Table 5-7: Description of ISDB-T\_information syntax (bit0 = LSB)

6	7-0	AC_data (AC data)	Note) Byte 6 and 7 of AC_data is not transmitted if it is used for TS $$
7	7-0	AC_data (AC data)	method STL/TLL.

## 5.5.3 Multiplex to invalid hierarchy IIP (ISDB-T\_Information\_Packet)

### (1) Multiplex position

Data of the IIP is inserted in the 188 bytes of the packet information part in which the layer\_indicator in Table 5-7 becomes '1000,' and only this one packet is multiplexed in one multiplex frame.

Information carried by IIP indicates the information of the multiplex frame after the multiplex frame to which the packet belongs.

#### (2) IIP information

Data Structure	Number of Bits	Bit String Notation
ISDB-T_information_packet0{		
TSP_header{		
sync_byte	8	bslbf
transport_error_indicator	1	bslbf
payload_unit_start_indicator	1	bslbf
transport_priority	1	bslbf
PID	13	uimsbf
transport_scrambling_control	2	bslbf
adaptation_field_control	2	bslbf
continuity_counter	4	uimsbf
}		
payload{		
IIP_packet_pointer	16	uimsbf
modulation_control_configuration_information()	160	bslbf
IIP_branch_number	8	uimsbf
last_IIP_branch_number	8	uimsbf
$network\_synchronization\_information\_length$	8	uimsbf
network_synchronization_information()		
for(i=0;i<(159- network_synchronization_information		
_length);i++){	8	bslbf
stuffing_byte(0xFF)		
}		
}		
}		

### Table 5-8: Syntax of IIP (ISDB-T\_Information\_Packet)

Syntax	Description
sync_byte	TSP synchronization byte. 0x47('0100 0111')
transport_error_indicator	Not used. Should be always '0'
payload_unit_start_indicator	Should be always '1'
transport_priority	Not used. Should be always '0'
PID	Should be service provider defined. However, the same PID is used for digital terrestrial television broadcasting.
transport_scrambling_control	Not used. Should be always '00'
adaptation_field_control	Should be always '01' (only payload)
continuity_counter	Should be used in accordance with ISO/IEC13818-1.
IIP_packet_pointer	Indicates the number of packet from the multiplex position to the next multiplex frame head in the multiplex frame of the ISDB-T_information_packet. The value of the last TPS of the multiplex frame should be 0 and should be counted from the multiplex position of the ISDB-T_information_packet to the next multiplex frame head in TSP unit.
IIP_branch_number	Indicates the branch number of the IIP. When the network_synchronization_information is not within 159 byte, the network_synchronization_information can be overlapped on multiple packets (sub IIP packet). This branch number (sub IIP packet) goes round for each IIP packet. The IIP_branch_number of the first packet in the sub IIP packet is 0x00.
last_IIP_branch_number	Indicates the last IIP_branch_number of the sub IIP packet. When the sub IIP packet is constructed by only one packet (when the network_synchronization_information is within 159 byte), 0x00 is indicated and when the sub IIP packet is constructed by two packets, 0x01 is indicated.
network_synchronization_ information_length	Length of the following network_synchronization_information is designated. The value of this length should be 159 or less.

## Table 5-9: Description of the syntax of IIP

As the IIP packet should be one TSP per multiplex frame, the payload is 184 bytes. For transmitting information exceeding 184 bytes, it should be transmitted by overlapping on multiple multiplex frames.

When the IIP is constructed by multiple TSPs, the TSP inserted in the multiplex frame is called the sub IIP packet.

The relation between IIP\_branch\_number and last\_IIP\_branch\_number, when the sub IIP is constructed by two packets, is shown below.



- Note 1: Unless the contents of modulation\_control\_configuration\_information are changed, the same content is maintained, not in accordance with the IIP\_branch\_number.
- Note 2: For net\_sync\_info\_A / B, different contents of the equipment loop (mentioned later) go round.

Fig. 5-11: Configuration example of sub IIP

## (3) Configuration of modulation\_control\_configuration\_information

Data Configuration	Number of	Bit String
Data Comigaration	Bits	Notation
modulation control configuration information $0$		
TMCC synchronization word	1	helhf
AC data officiative position	1	bsibi
AC_data_enective_position	1	bsibi
mode CL information	2	DSIDI
mode_GI_Information	4	h all f
initialization_timing_indicator	4	
current_mode	Z	
current_guard_interval	Z	
next_mode	2	bslbf
next_guard_interval	2	bslbf
}		
TMCC_information{		
system_identifier	2	bslbf
count_down_Index	4	bslbf
switch-on_control_flag_used_for_alert_broadcasting	1	$\mathbf{bslbf}$
current_configuration_information{		
partial_reception_flag	1	bslbf
transmission_parameters_for_layer_A{		
modulation_scheme	3	bslbf
coding_rate_of_inner_code	3	bslbf
length_of_time_interleaving	3	bslbf
number_of segments	4	bslbf
}		
transmission parameters for layer B{		
modulation scheme	3	bslbf
coding rate of inner code	3	bslbf
length of time interleaving	3	bslbf
number of segments	4	hslhf
}	1	55151
transmission parameters for layer C{		
modulation_schome	3	helhf
coding rate of inner code	3	belbf
length of time interleaving	2	balbf
number of comments	5	balbf
number_or_segments	4	DSIDI
port configuration information		
next_configuration_information(	1	halbf
partial_reception_nag	1	DSIDI
transmission_parameters_for_layer_A(	0	1 11. C
modulation_scheme	3	bsibi
coding_rate_of_inner_code	3	bslbf
length_of_time_interleaving	3	bslbf
number_of_segments	4	bslbf
}		
transmission_parameters_for_layer_B{		
modulation_scheme	3	bslbf
coding_rate_of_inner_code	3	bslbf
length_of_time_interleaving	3	$\mathbf{bslbf}$
number_of_segments	4	bslbf
}		

# Table 5-10: Syntax of modulation\_control\_configuration\_information

### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

transmission_parameters_for_layer_C{		
modulation_scheme	3	bslbf
coding_rate_of_inner_code	3	bslbf
length_of_time_interleaving	3	bslbf
number_of_segments	4	bslbf
}		
}		
phase_correctiton_of_CP_in_connected_transmission	3	bslbf
TMCC_reserved_future_use	12	bslbf
reserved_future_use	10	bslbf
}		
$CRC_{32}$	32	rpchof
}		

Table 5-11: Description	of syntax of I	modulation	control	configuration	information
					-

Syntax	Description
TMCC_synchronization_word	Synchronizes to the OFDM frame synchronization signal allocated in B1 to B16 of the TMCC carrier and transfers as follows.
	w0 (0011010111101110) = 0 w1 (1100101000010001) = '1'
AC_data_effective_position	Indicates whether invalid hierarchical data or dummy byte data is used as the actual AC data to be transmitted by broadcasting waves.
	The dummy byte should be used to transmit the seismic motion
	warning information in the AC data.
	'1': dummy byte data is used (including the case in which AC data is
	not multiplexed)
mode_GI_information	Information of transmission mode and guard interval ratio
initialization_timing_indicator	Indicates the switching timing of mode and guard_interval.
	• Normal value is 15('1111'). The value is decremented by OFDM frame unit from 15 frames before the switching timing
	<ul> <li>The switching timing should be the start timing of the first OFDM</li> </ul>
	frame when the initial setting pointer value returns from 0 to 15.
	During count down (when the value is other than 15), a revision of
aumont mode	next_mode and next_guard_interval cannot be made.
current_mode	'00': reserved
	'01': Mode 1 '10': Mode 2 '11': Mode 3
current_guard_interval	Indicates the guard interval ratio now being used.
	'00': 1/32 '01': 1/16 '10': 1/8 '11': 1/4
next_mode	Indicates the next Mode (1,2,3)
next_guard_interval	Indicates the next guard interval
TMCC_information	Same as the TMCC information in ISDB-T.
system_identifier	Same as the system discrimination in TMCC information.
count_down_index	Same as the transmission parameter switching index described in the TMCC information.
switch-on_control_flag_used for_alert_broadcasting	Same as the startup control flag (start flag for emergency-alarm broadcasting) described in the TMCC information.
current_configuration _information	Same as the current information of the TMCC information.
partial_reception_flag	Same as the partial-reception flag described in the TMCC information.
transmission_parameters _for_layer_A	Same as the transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer A of the TMCC information.
modulation_scheme	Same as the carrier modulation described in the TMCC information.
coding_rate_of_inner_code	Same as the convolution coding ratio described in the TMCC information.
length_of_time_interleaving	Same as time interleave length described in the TMCC information.
Number_of_segments	Same as the segment number described in the TMCC information.
transmission_parameters _for_layer_B	Same as the transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer B in the TMCC information.
transmission_parameters _for_layer_C	Same as the transmission-parameter information for hierarchical layer C in the TMCC information.
next_configuration_information	Same as the next information of the TMCC information.
phase_correction_of_CP _in_connected_transmission	Same as the phase-shift-correction value for connected segment transmission described in the TMCC information.
TMCC_reserved_future_use	Same as the reserved bit $(B_{110} \text{ to } B_{121})$ described in the TMCC information

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

reserved_future_use	Reserved bit for future extension. All of them should be '1'.
CRC_32	CRC value calculated by the following polynomial used in ISO/IEC13818-1.
	Ranges are to all the modulation_control_configuration_information from TMCC_synchronization_word to reserved_future_use. Polynomial= $x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$

# (4) Structure of network\_synchronization\_information

Data Structure	Number of Bits	Bit String Notation
$n_{\text{structure}}$ are character information $0$	Ditto	rotation
network_synchronization_information()	0	
synchronization_id	0	uimsoi
II(synchronization_id=-0x00)		
SFN_synchronization_information{		
SFN_synchronization_information_header	2.4	1 11 0
synchronization_time_stamp	24	bslbf
maximum_delay	24	bslbf
}		
equipment_loop_length	8	uimsbf
for(i=0;i <equipment_loop_length 5;i++){<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></equipment_loop_length>		
equipment_control_information{		
equipment_id	12	uimsbf
renewal_flag	1	bslbf
static_delay_flag	1	bslbf
reserved_future_use	1	bslbf
time_offset_polarity	1	bslbf
time offset	24	bslbf
}		
}		
}		
CBC 32	39	rnchof
}	52	rpenor
oleo if(evenchronization id==0xFF){		
$f_{or}(j=0;j$		
101(j-0)(10)(j+1)(	0	hallhf
stunnig_byte(0xrr)	0	DSIDI
) }		
\$ }		
ĵ		

# Table 5-12: Syntax of network\_synchronization\_information

Syntax	Description
synchronization_id	'0x00' :SFN_synchronization_information is added
	'0x01'~'0xFE': For future extension
	'0xFF' : SFN_synchronization_information is not added.
SFN_synchronization	Synchronization control information including delay time control in SFN
_information	network.
synchronization_time_stamp	Time difference from the reference time.
	Indicated in 10MHz periodic unit (on the 100ns time scale).
	Indicates the delay time of the head of the multiplex frame (start time) in which the pout TMCC symphonization, word is '0' against the latest 1 page
	signal gained from the time reference such as GPS at the delivery output
	(Ex: output to STL) of the line to the broadcasting station.
maximum delay	Maximum delay time. The time interval between the delivery output
_ `	(Ex: output to STL) of the line to the broadcasting station at the studio
	and the broadcasting wave emission from the transmission antenna of
	each broadcasting station in the SFN network <sup>-Note 1.</sup>
	This value should be get to less then 1 accord (within the range between 0.
	(0x000000) and 9999999 $(0x98967F)$
equipment loop length	Indicates the following entire length of equipment loop
edarburene_reeb_rengen	Indicates in byte units.
equipment_control_information	Information to control the offset of delay time or fixed delay time
	individually for each broadcasting station.
equipment_id	Designates each broadcasting station to control by the
	equipment_control_information.
renewal_flag	Renewal flag.
	When renewing the values of static_delay_flag, time_offset_polarity, and
	time_offset, this field in equipment_control_information of the targeted
	maximum delay, this field in all equipment control information syntaxes
	(all equipment loops) will be renewed.
	This field toggles between '1' and '0' for renewal.
static_delay_flag	Static delay flag. For the delay control of SFN, the delay time may be
	adjusted by the reference time such as GPS in one case and typical and
	static delay time may be allocated to the broadcasting station not using
	when the latter control is employed. In this case, the control information
	only time_offset is effective and only this value is used for delay control.
reserved_future_use	Reserved bit for future extension. The value should be '1'.
time_offset_polarity	Indicates polarity of the following time_offset. '0' should be designated
	for a positive value and '1' for a negative value. When static_delay_flag
	is '1', '0' should be always designated.

## Table 5-13: Description of syntax of network\_synchronization\_information

time_offset	Indicated in 10-MHz periodic unit (on the 100 ns time scale).
	The meaning of this field changes according to the value of
	static_delay_flag:
	[When static_delay_flag = '0']
	Indicates the offset of delay time at each broadcasting station against
	maximum_delay <sup>*Note1</sup> . This value, together with the polarity given by
	time_offset_polarity, is specified within the range of -1 second <
	time_offset < 1 second (between 0 (0x000000) and 9999999 (0x98967F) as
	the input value for this field).
	[When static_delay_flag = '1']
	Indicates delay time, when setting a specific, fixed, delay time to a
	broadcasting station without using standard time *Note1. This value, which
	is less than 1 second, is specified within the range between 0 (0x000000)
	and 9999999 (0x98967F).
CRC_32	The CRC value is calculated by the following polynomial used in
	ISO/IEC13818-1.
	Ranges to all the SFN_synchronization_information from the
	(synchronization_time_stamp) which is the head of
	SFN_synchronization_information_header to time_offset.
	Polynomial= $x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x^{10} + x^{10$
	x + 1

\* Note 1: The following time values indicated in the corresponding fields shall include the OFDM modulation time excluding the theoretical delay time due to time interleaving:

- The time interval between the delivery output of the line to the broadcasting station at the studio and the broadcasting wave emission from the transmission antenna of each broadcasting station in the SFN network (maximum\_delay);
- The value of maximum\_delay with the offset of delay time at each broadcasting station (maximum\_delay ± time\_offset) when static\_delay\_flag = "0";
- ["+" or "-" when time\_offset\_polarity is "0" or "1", respectively]
- The fixed delay time of each broadcasting station (time\_offset) when static\_delay\_flag = "1",

Thus, the delay time required for SFN synchronization at each broadcasting station (the time between arrival at the broadcasting station and input to the modulator) needs to be calculated by deducting the time required for OFDM modulation (excluding the theoretical delay time due to time interleaving).

## Chapter 6: Operational guidelines for AC data transmission

This chapter defines multiplexing of AC data on broadcasting TS, timing of AC data multiplexed on broadcasting TS in relation to OFDM frames, and mapping of AC data to OFDM carriers. There are two types of multiplex positions when multiplexing AC data on broadcasting TS signals:

(1) Multiplexed on the dummy byte part of each TSP (Transport Stream Packet).

(2) Multiplexed on invalid hierarchy TSP.

When the seismic motion warning information is transmitted using AC data in segment No.0, AC data should be multiplexed on the dummy byte part on each broadcasting TS packet considering smaller transmission delay time.

## 6.1 Determination of broadcasting TS multiplex positions

Whether AC data is multiplexed on the dummy byte part or invalid hierarchy TSP is determined by looking at AC\_data\_effective\_position of IIP's "modulation\_control\_configuration\_information". For more information, refer to Tables 5-10 and 5-11 in (3) of Section 5.5.3 in this Attachment.

## 6.2 Multiplexing on dummy byte part

### 6.2.1 Multiplex position

When multiplexing AC data on the dummy byte part, the data should be multiplexed on the 8-byte part other than the 188-byte information part in the 204-byte broadcasting TS format. For more information, refer to Fig. 5-10 in (1) of Section 5.5.2 in this Attachment.

## 6.2.2 Syntax for multiplexing AC data on dummy byte part

Multiplexing of AC data on the dummy byte part of TSP is defined by the syntax of ISDB-T\_information. For more information, refer to Tables 5-6 and 5-7 in (2) of Section 5.5.2 in this Attachment.

## 6.2.3 Mapping of AC data to OFDM carriers

This section defines the mapping of AC data to OFDM carriers; the AC data to be transferred as broadcasting TS. The AC data may be multiplexed on the dummy byte part or the invalid hierarchy of broadcasting TS. Multiplexing on the dummy byte part has an advantage of transmission with small delay.

## 6.2.3.1 Timing of multiplexing AC data in relation to OFDM frames

AC data multiplexed on the dummy byte part is transmitted in synchronization with the OFDM frame pulse that immediately follows. Fig. 6-1 shows the transmission frame timing of AC data multiplexed on the dummy byte part. The AC data AC#N multiplexed on the multiplex frame #N is transmitted in synchronization with the OFDM frame pulse that immediately follows.

									_
Input multiplex frame	Frame #N		Frame #N+1		F	Frame #N+2 F		rame #N+3	
Extracted AC	AC#N		AC#N+1			AC#N+2		AC#N+3	
	+	Delay of AC within modulator				*:	Fran	ne pulse positio	n
OFDM frame		Frame #N-	1	Frame #N		Frame #N+	·1	Frame #N+	·2
AC data		AC#N		AC#N+1		AC#N+2		AC#N+3	

Note: Indicates the case where the delay of signal processing in the main line system within the modulator is one frame plus a fraction.

Fig. 6-1: Illustrated timing of mapping to the dummy byte part

### 6.2.3.2 Order of mapping to OFDM carriers

Among the AC data multiplexed on the dummy byte part of TSP with AC\_data\_invalid\_flag = "0", the effective byte part indicated by AC\_data\_effective\_bytes is considered as effective AC data. The positions of bytes to be used shall be specified by each service provider.

The effective data is mapped sequentially from lower- to higher-frequency AC carrier positions of OFDM. The MSB side of the effective byte part represents the head of the effective data. When mapping of data to all AC carriers of one symbol is finished, mapping advances to the next symbol. "Symbols" in this chapter means "OFDM symbols". Fig. 6-2 shows the order of mapping to the AC carrier positions of OFDM.

When there are differential OFDM segments, multiplexed AC data is mapped sequentially, regardless of AC1 or AC2, to AC carriers in the order of lower to higher frequencies.

Since the first OFDM frame symbol (symbol 0) is the reference for differential modulation for AC carriers, AC data is not mapped to this symbol. Within one multiplex frame, therefore, the amount of AC data mapped to AC carriers (including stuffed data if required) corresponds to 203 symbols.



Fig. 6-2 Order of mapping to the AC carrier positions of OFDM

## 6.3 Multiplexing on invalid hierarchy

## 6.3.1 Multiplex position

When multiplexing AC data on the invalid hierarchy, the data is put into the 188-byte information part of the packet, where layer\_indicator described in Table 5-7 in (2) of Section 5.5.2 in this Attachment is "0100".

### 6.3.2 Syntax for multiplexing AC data on invalid hierarchy

The syntax for multiplexing AC data on the invalid hierarchy is listed and explained in Tables 6-1 and 6-2, respectively.

Data Structure	Number of bits	Bit String Notation
AC_data_packet0{		
TSP_header{		
sync_byte	8	bslbf
transport_error_indicator	1	bslbf
payload_unit_start_indicator	1	bslbf
transport_priority	1	bslbf
PID	13	uimsbf
transport_scrambling_control	2	bslbf
adaptation_flag_control	2	bslbf
continuity_counter	4	uimsbf
}		
payload{		
AC_select_id	4	uimsbf
reserved_future_use	4	bslbf
AC_packet_number	16	uimsbf
data_length	8	uimsbf
for(i=0;i <data_length-4;i++){< td=""><td></td><td></td></data_length-4;i++){<>		
AC_data	8	bslbf
}		
$CRC_{32}$	32	rpchof
for(j=0;j<180-data_length;j++){		
stuffing_byte(0xFF)	8	uimsbf
}		
}		
}		

Table 6-1: Syntax for multiplexing AC data on the invalid hierarchy

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

Syntax	Description
sync_byte	Synchronization byte (0x47))
transport_error_indicator	Not used (always '0')
payload_unit_start _indicator	Should be always '1' when there is one packet within one multiplex frame where AC data is multiplexed. When there are multiple packets, the first packet where AC data is multiplexed is given a value of "1" and all the subsequent packets are given a value of "0".
transport_priority	Should be always '0'.
PID	Depends on the operational provisions of each service provider.
transport_scrambling _control	Not used (always '00')
adaptation_flag_control	Should be always '01' (only payload).
continuity_counter	Should be in accordance with ISO/IEC13818-1.
AC_select_id	When AC data is multiplexed and transmitted separately to different pieces of transmission equipment, this information allows selection of AC data that is relevant to each piece of equipment. This information is specified by service providers.
reserved_future_use	Reserved bits for future extension. All of them should be '1'.
AC_packet_number	Numbers assigned to packets where AC data is multiplexed. These numbers are assigned sequentially from the first multiplex frame. AC_packet_number = '0x0000' for the first packet where AC data is multiplexed in the multiplex frame. Sequential numbers are given independently to each AC_select_id.
data_length	The length of data between the next byte of this syntax and CRC_32; specified in bytes.
AC_data	Multiplexed AC data. AC data is multiplexed as one or more bytes for each packet. When a fraction of byte occurs in the last packet of the multiplex frame where AC data is multiplexed, the remaining bits of the byte are stuffed by inserting '1' (See Section 6.3.3 "Data arrangement on multiplex frames and TS packets").
CRC_32	The CRC value calculated from the following polynomial used in ISO/IEC13818-1: Polynomial= $x^{32}+x^{26}+x^{23}+x^{22}+x^{16}+x^{12}+x^{11}+x^{10}+x^8+x^7+x^5+x^4+x^2+x+1$ . The range covers entirely from the beginning to the end of AC_data.

# Table 6-2: Description of syntax for multiplexing AC data on the invalid hierarchy
## 6.3.3 Data arrangement on multiplex frames and TS packets

Data on multiplex frames and TS packets is arranged as follows:

- (1) AC data multiplexed on one multiplex frame is multiplexed on the AC carriers of one OFDM frame.
- (2) The number of bits in the AC data of one multiplex frame shall be made equal to the number of AC carriers for the 203 symbols excluding symbol 0, which is the reference for differential modulation. A value of "1" shall be inserted (stuffing) in AC carrier positions not used for transmitting AC data.
- (3) AC data is multiplexed sequentially from data corresponding to AC carrier positions with lower frequencies to data with higher frequencies and from the MSB side of each packet. "Byte#" is a convenient name assigned to indicate the order of data within the multiplex frame.

	Byte0	Byte1	Byte2	• • •
7(MSB)	D0	D8	D16	
6	D1	D9	D17	
5	D2	D10	D18	
4	D3	D11	D19	
3	D4	D12	D20	
2	D5	D13	D21	
1	D6	D14	D22	
0(LSB)	D7	D15	D23	

Table 6-3: Order of multiplexing AC data

Mapped in the order of AC carriers of lower to higher frequencies, thus in the order of "D0, D1, D2, D3, ..."

(4) When a fraction of byte occurs in the multiplex frame by dividing the number of AC carriers on a byte basis, the last bytes of the last packet in the multiplex frame where AC data is multiplexed are stuffed with "1" (see the example below). The stuffed data is discarded in the modulator because only data corresponding to the AC carriers of one OFDM frame is acquired.

Example: Mode 3, DQPSK, hierarchical layer A, 13 segments

AC1 carrier: 8 x 13 x 203 = 21,112 bits

AC2 carrier: 19 x 13 x 203 = 50,141 bits

Total of 71,253 bits (8,906.625 bytes)

The arrangement of AC data in this case is shown in Fig. 6-3, which only shows the packets where AC data is multiplexed and only AC data in each packet.



Fig. 6-3: Example of multiplexing on a multiplex frame (stuffing)

(5) When AC data whose number of bits exceeds the maximum number that can be mapped to one OFDM frame is multiplexed on one multiplex frame, the part of the AC data beyond the maximum number counted from the head of the multiplex frame will be discarded.

Example: Mode 3, DQPSK, hierarchical layer A, 13 segments

AC1 carrier: 8 x 13 x 203 = 21,112 bits

AC2 carrier: 19 x 13 x 203 = 50,141 bits

Total of 71,253 bits (8,906.625 bytes)

When AC data consisting of 72,000 bits is multiplexed on the multiplex frame with the above number of bits that can be mapped, the AC data of 71,254th and subsequent bits will not be mapped to the OFDM frame, as shown in Fig. 6-4.



Fig. 6-4: Example of multiplexing data that exceeds the number of bits that can be mapped

## 6.3.4 Mapping to OFDM carriers

#### 6.3.4.1 Timing of multiplexing AC data in relation to OFDM frames

AC data multiplexed on the invalid hierarchy shall be transmitted in synchronization with the data sent by the multiplex frame to which the AC data belongs. Fig. 6-5 shows the transmission frame timing of AC data multiplexed on the invalid hierarchy.

									-
Input multiplex frame		Frame #N Fr		rame #N+1	F	Frame #N+2		rame #N+3	
Extracted AC		AC#N		AC#N+1	AC#N+2		AC#N+3		
	*: Frame pulse position								
OFDM frame		Frame #N-1		Frame #N	#N Frame #N-		·1	Frame #N+	-2
AC data		AC#N-1		AC#N		AC#N+1		AC#N+2	
				1					

Note: Indicates the case where the delay of signal processing in the main line system within the modulator is one frame plus a fraction.

Fig. 6-5: Illustrated timing of mapping when data is multiplexed on the invalid hierarchy

## 6.3.4.2 Procedure of mapping to OFDM carriers

Multiplexed AC data is mapped sequentially, regardless of AC1 or AC2, to AC carriers in the order of lower to higher frequencies. When mapping to all AC carriers of one symbol is finished, mapping advances to the next symbol.

Since the first OFDM frame symbol (symbol 0) is the reference for differential modulation for AC carriers, AC data is not mapped to this symbol. Within one multiplex frame, therefore, the amount of AC data mapped to AC carriers (including stuffed data if required) corresponds to 203 symbols.



Fig. 6-6: Procedure of mapping to the AC carrier positions of OFDM

## 6.4 Considerations in multiplexing AC data to broadcasting TS

## 6.4.1 Considerations in the order of AC data carriers

When multiplexing AC data on broadcasting TS, it is necessary to understand which AC carriers are used to transmit AC data, in light of possible use of multiple lines and partial use of AC carriers. Suppose that sound system 3 (ADPCM, 64 kbps) shown in Table A2.2-1 of Section A2.2.1 in this Reference is multiplexed as AC data in a synchronization segment configuration where only AC1 can be used. Assuming that the OFDM transmission wave is in Mode 3, there are 104 AC1 carriers (8 carriers x 13 segments). Because multiplexed AC data corresponds to 92 carriers, the remaining 12 carriers need to be stuffed. At the multiplex positions corresponding to the stuffed carriers, stuffing is carried out on a bit basis during multiplexing on broadcasting TS with AC\_data\_invalid\_flag = "0" and AC\_data = "1".

Since multiplexed AC data is mapped sequentially, regardless of AC1 or AC2, to AC carriers in the modulator, AC data sorted and stuffed in advance will be multiplexed if distinction of segment allocation or distinction between AC1 and AC2 is required. Because delay time of AC data transmission depends on the processing of AC data during multiplexing, delay time during multiplexing on broadcasting TS must also be taken into account if AC data needs to be transmitted with little delay.

## 6.4.2 Considerations in the timing of multiplexing on dummy bytes

This section describes considerations in avoiding overflow or underflow between AC data multiplexed to dummy bytes and AC data actually transmitted as broadcasting wave at the OFDM modulator.

AC data is modulated with DBPSK at the AC carriers of each symbol and then transmitted as broadcasting wave. However, AC data is not transmitted for the first symbol (symbol 0), which is the reference for differential modulation. AC data is therefore transmitted by symbols 1 to 203, excluding symbol 0, among the total of 204 symbols in one OFDM frame.

On the other hand, signals are processed (IFFT) on a symbol basis at the channel-coding IFFT block of the OFDM modulator. In the OFDM modulator, therefore, AC data to be transmitted needs to be input before or during the signal processing of a preceding symbol.

The OFDM frame defined here coincides with the multiplex frame. This means the head of the multiplex frame indicated by frame\_head\_packet\_flag in Table 5-7 in (2) of Section 5.5.2 in this Attachment corresponds to the head of the OFDM frame. The number of bytes in the transmission TSP corresponding to the duration of one symbol is shown in Table 6-4 for different situations.

	Number of bytes of transmission TSP for the duration of one symbol					
Mode	Guard interval	Guard interval	Guard interval	Guard interval		
	ratio	ratio	ratio	ratio		
	1/4	1/8	1/16	1/32		
Mode 1	1280	1152	1088	1056		
Mode 2	2560	2304	2176	2112		
Mode 3	5120	4608	4352	4224		

### Table 6-4: Number of bytes corresponding to the duration of one symbol

It must be noted that AC data to be transmitted by the next symbol needs to be input to the OFDM modulator during or prior to the period required for transmitting the number of bytes of transmission TSP shown in Table 6-4 for the applicable mode and guard interval ratio.

(1) Guidelines on the underflow of AC data

The amount of AC data transmitted during the period of one symbol needs to be input to the OFDM modulator for each of symbols 0 to 202.

(2) Guidelines on the overflow of AC data

Given that AC data is transmitted in connection with the TSP transmitted by the same multiplex frame, the OFDM modulator has a buffer corresponding to the AC data amount of one OFDM frame. The buffer is renewed on a basis of multiplex frame defined in Table 5-7 in (2) of Section 5.5.2 in this Attachment. Thus, excessive AC data beyond the transmission limit for one OFDM frame is discarded in the OFDM modulator. AC data input during the period of symbol 203 is also discarded in the OFDM modulator.

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

<Blank Page>

ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

# Appendix

# Appendix

## Contents

Appendix 1: Transmission Delay Caused by the Channel Coding	141
Appendix 2: Example of a Study on an AC (Auxiliary Channel) Transmission System.	
A2.1 Foreword	
A2.2 Source coding	
A2.2.1 Sound coding scheme	
A2.2.2 Data-coding scheme	
A2.3 Channel-coding scheme	
A2.3.1 AC-packet configuration	145
A2.3.2 AC-packet bit assignment	146
A2.4 Descriptions of bits in AC data and packet-transmission sequence	149
A2.4.1 Descriptions of bits for AC-packet configuration 1	149
A2.4.2 Description of bits for AC-packet configuration 2	152
A2.5 AC-packet transmission	
A2.5.1 AC transmission capacity	156
A2.5.2 Number of Carriers Used	157
A2.5.3 Sound bit rate	157
A2.6 Case study on the timing of AC data transmission by dummy bytes	158
A2.6.1 Timing model study	158
A2.6.1.1 Timing model considering uniformity	158
A2.6.1.2 Timing model without considering uniformity	159
Appendix 3: Considerations in the Link Budgets for ISDB-T	
A3.1 Review procedure	161
A3.2 Assumptions made in link budget	161
A3.2.1 Network model	
A3.2.2 Transmitter model	
A3.2.3 Reception model within service area	167
A3.2.4 Provisional values selected for the link budget model	170
A3.3 Example of link budget	171
A3.4 Standard settings for transmitting equipment in network	173
A3.4.1 Study on the impact of changes to provisional values on overall link budg	get 175
A3.5 Corrective actions if model case requirements cannot be met	
A3.5.1 Corrective action if your stage-to-stage distance is longer than that in the case	model
A3.5.2 Corrective action if the multipath disturbance, SFN sneak path, and co-c interference levels are higher than those in the model case	hannel 177
A3.5.3 Corrective action when there are many stages	
A3.5.4 Corrective action when multipath and radio-interference conditions with service area are harsher than in the model case	in the 178
A3.6 Effect of changing transmission parameters, and problems	

A3.7 Specific n	etwork construction	process	30
-----------------	---------------------	---------	----

# Appendix 1: Transmission Delay Caused by the Channel Coding

The delays shown below occur as a result of interleaving steps conducted at the ISDB-T channel coding. This section shows examples of delays caused during the period between the TS re-multiplexing and guard-interval addition steps shown in Fig. 3-2 of Section 3.1, Chapter 3, in addition to delays caused during the period between the corresponding decoding steps.

Transmission mode	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3					
Byte interleaving	1 frame							
Bit interleaving	2 OFDM symbols							
	0 frames $/I = 0$	0 frames $/I = 0$	0 frames /I = 0					
Time interleaving	2 frames /I = 4	1 frame /I = 2	1 frame /I = 1					
Time interleaving	4 frames $/I = 8$	2 frames $/I = 4$	1 frame /I = 2					
	8 frames /I = 16	4 frames /I = 8	2 frames /I = 4					
Combining of hierarchical layers (transmitting side)	1 frame							
Combining of hierarchical layers (receiving side)	3TS packets							

# Table A1-1: Transmission and Reception Delays (Number of Delayed Frames) Caused by the Channel Coding

## Table A1-2: Transmission and Reception Delay Times Caused by the Channel Coding

Time		Normhan af	Delay time					
Mode	interleaving	delayed frames	Guard-interval ratio: 1/4	Guard-interval ratio: 1/8	Guard-interval ratio: 1/16	Guard-interval ratio: 1/32		
	I = 0	3 frames	192.8 ms	$173.5 \mathrm{\ ms}$	$163.9 \mathrm{\ ms}$	$159.0 \mathrm{\ ms}$		
Mada 1	I = 4	5 frames	321.3 ms	289.2 ms	$273.1 \mathrm{\ ms}$	$265.1 \mathrm{\ ms}$		
Mode 1	I = 8	I = 8 7 frames		404.8 ms	404.8 ms 382.3 ms			
	I =16	11 frames	706.9 ms	636.2 ms	600.8 ms	583.2 ms		
	I = 0	3 frames	385.6  ms	347.0 ms	$327.7 \mathrm{\ ms}$	318.1 ms		
	I = 2	4 frames	514.1 ms	462.7 ms	437.0 ms	424.1 ms		
mode 2	I = 4	5 frames	642.6 ms	578.3  ms	$546.2 \mathrm{\ ms}$	530.1 ms		
	I = 8	7 frames	899.6 ms	809.7 ms	$764.7 \mathrm{\ ms}$	742.2  ms		
	I = 0	3 frames	771.1 ms	694.0 ms	$655.5 \mathrm{\ ms}$	636.2 ms		
11 1 0	I = 1	4 frames	1028.2 ms	925.3 ms	873.9 ms	848.2 ms		
mode 3	I = 2	4 frames	1028.2 ms	925.3 ms	873.9 ms	848.2 ms		
•	I = 4	5 frames	1285.2 ms	1156.7 ms	1092.4 ms	1060.3 ms		

Note: The above delay time has been calculated assuming that the total number of delays that develop as a result of processing, including time interleaving, byte interleaving, bit interleaving, and the combining of hierarchical layers, is 3 OFDM frames.

## Appendix 2: Example of a Study on an AC (Auxiliary Channel) Transmission System

## A2.1 Foreword

The AC modulation scheme, amplitude, and carrier arrangement are discussed in Chapter 3 of the standard. However, no stipulations are made regarding its transmission system.

Trunk signals transmitted by digital terrestrial broadcasting are delayed as a result of steps including time interleaving, delay adjustment, multiplex-frame pattern formation, and the combining of hierarchical layers conducted at the channel coding and decoder. The transmission delay time varies from 0.1 seconds to approximately one second depending on the mode, guard-interval ratio, and time interleaving depth selected.

AC features a small delay time, although its transmission capacity is low. This reference discusses an example of an AC transmission system in which sound signals are transmitted using AC, in order to measure the delay time that develops during transmission of trunk sound.

Note that the examples shown in this study are premised on use of the same transmission system for both ISDB-T and ISDB-T  $_{\rm SB}$ .

## A2.2 Source coding

## A2.2.1 Sound coding scheme

Only the coding schemes shown in Table A2.2-1 are applicable to low-bit-rate sound that can be transmitted by AC. Note that all sampling frequencies must be 8.000 kHz.

Sound s	Sound system		2	3	4	5
Coding	scheme	PSI-CELP	ACELP	ADPCM	ADPCM	ADPCM
Total		5.6	11.2	64	48	38.4
Bit rate	Sound	3.45	6.7		32	
[kbps]	Error correction	2.15	4.5	32	16	6.4
Sampling free	quency [kHz]	8	8		8	
Frame ler	ngth [ms]	40	20	5		
Subframe le	ength [ms]	10	-	-		
Data bit	s/frame	138	134	160 160 160		160
Total bit	s/frame	224	224	320 240		192
Sound error correction		Convolutional	Convolutional	Convolutional- coding rate 1/2	Convolutional- coding rate 2/3	Convolutional- coding rate 5/6
Stand	dard	ARIB Standard RCR STD-27H (Section 5.2)	ARIB Standard RCR STD-27H (Section 5.4)	ard ARIB Standard 7H ITU-T Recommendation G.726		n G.726
Reference (con syste	nmunications em)	PDC	PDC		PHS, etc.	

Table A2.2-1: Coding-Scheme Specifications for Low-Bit-Rate Sound

(1) Sound system 1

The sound coding scheme and sound error-correction scheme for this system must satisfy the requirements specified in Section 5.2 of ARIB Standard RCR STD-27H.

(2) Sound system 2

The sound coding scheme and sound error-correction scheme for this system must satisfy the requirements specified in Section 5.4 of ARIB Standard RCR STD-27H.

(3) Sound coding scheme for sound systems 3 to 5

The sound coding scheme for these systems must satisfy the requirements specified in G.726 of the ITU-T Recommendations.

(4) Sound error-correction scheme for sound systems 3 to 5

The convolutional code, the mother code of which features constraint length k = 7 and a coding rate of 1/2, as with the trunk inner code, must be used for sound error correction for sound systems 3 to 5. Note, however, that three types of puncturing, 1/2, 2/3, and 5/6, must be available.

#### A2.2.2 Data-coding scheme

The data-coding scheme has yet to be determined.

## A2.3 Channel-coding scheme

## A2.3.1 AC-packet configuration

Two AC-packet configurations must be used, as shown in Fig. A2.3-1. There are no parity bits with configuration 1, though parity bits are available with configuration 2. The packet-configuration identifier must consist of three bits. The contents of this identifier must be 000 for configuration 1, and 111 for configuration 2. This identifier must not have any other contents.

Configurations 1 and 2 must be used when sound with little delay time is transmitted, and when data such as control data that must be highly reliable is transmitted, respectively.

Because the packet-configuration identifier consists of three bits, and because the contents of this identifier are either 000 or 111, it is possible to properly identify the AC-packet configuration in the presence of one incorrect bit among three bits.

Reference bit for differential modulation (C<sub>0</sub>) is generated in the modulator side. Therefore, the reference bit for differential modulation is not multiplexed on broadcasting TS, but 203 bits (C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>203</sub>) that correspond to packet header, data, and parity are multiplexed.



Reference bit for differential modulation

Reference bit for differential modulation



Fig. A2.3-1: AC-Packet Configuration

## A2.3.2 AC-packet bit assignment

Tables A2.3-1 and A2.3-2 show the bit assignments for AC-packet configurations 1 and 2, respectively.

Bit No.	Number of bits	Description	Remarks		
$C_1-C_3$	3	Configuration identifier (000)	Identification of configuration 1 or 2 (Configuration 1)		
$C_4$	1	Service identifier	Two types (0: sound; 1: extension)		
$\mathrm{C}_5-\mathrm{C}_6$	2	Circuit number	4 circuits max. (0 to 3)		
${ m C}_{7} - { m C}_{13}$	7	Packet number	Packet sequence for sending sound data with circuit number n		
C14	1	Maxpacket-number identifier	1 for max. packet number and 0 for any other number		
$C_{15} - C_{18}$	4	Parity bits from $C_4$ to $C_{14}$ (11 bits)	Parity bits using (15,11) BCH code		
$C_{19} - C_{203}$	185	Data			

Table A2.3-1: AC-packet configuration 1

Table A2.3-2: A	C-packet co	nfiguration 2
-----------------	-------------	---------------

Bit No.	Number of bits	Description	Remarks		
$\mathrm{C}_1-\mathrm{C}_3$	3	Configuration identifier (111)	Identification of configuration 1 or 2 (Configuration 2)		
$\mathrm{C}_4-\mathrm{C}_7$	4	Service identifier	16 types		
C8- C16	9	Packet number	Packet sequence for each service-identifier content		
C <sub>17</sub>	1	Maxpacket-number identifier	1 for the max. packet number and 0 for any other number		
$C_{18}$ - $C_{121}$	104	Data (13 bytes)			
$C_{122}C_{203}$	82	Parity bits from $C_4$ to $C_{121}$ (118 bits)	Parity bits using the shortened code (200,118) of the (273,191) difference cyclic code		

(1) Descriptions of bits for AC-packet configuration 1

```
(i) Service identifier (C<sub>4</sub>)
```

The service identifier must be one bit in length. "0" in this bit indicates that sound is transmitted. When the content of this bit is 1, which indicates an extension, the assignment and descriptions of bits  $C_5$  onward are undefined.

(ii) Circuit number (C<sub>5</sub> to C<sub>6</sub>)

These bits represent one of circuits 0 to 3 for transmitting sound. Up to four circuits can be used simultaneously for transmission.

With ISDB-T, a 6-MHz channel band (with 13 segments) can transmit three standard-quality Television programs. Therefore, it is preferable to use at least three circuits for transmission simultaneously.

With ISDB-T<sub>SB</sub>, simultaneous transmission using four circuits may be difficult. However, to ensure that the ISDB-T<sub>SB</sub> standard is consistent with the ISDB-T standard, we have decided that up to four circuits may be used for transmission simultaneously.

## (iii) Packet number (C7 to C13)

These bits represent the sequence for sending packets that convey sound using circuit number n (n = 0 to 3). When we let the number of packets in a frame with circuit number n be N, the packet numbers must be 0 to N-1.

In mode 3 and with a guard-interval ratio of 1/4, the bit rate for one carrier (185 bits) is 185 bits/257.04 msec = 0.720 kbps. Consequently, the bit rates for 8 carriers, 16 carriers, 64 carriers, and 128 carriers are 5.76 kbps, 11.52 kbps, 46.06 kbps, and 92.13 kbps, respectively. In order to ensure that signals generated by error-correcting 32-kbps ADPCM sound with a coding rate of 1/2 can be transmitted, the maximum number of packets must be 128 (7 bits).

(iv) Max.-packet-number identifier (C14)

When we let the number of packets in a frame with circuit number n be N, this bit must contain 1 as the max.-packet-number identifier when the packet number is N-1, and 0 for any other packet number.

This flag is intended to indicate how many packets within a frame are used to transmit sound with circuit number n.

(v) Packet-header parity bits (C<sub>15</sub> to C<sub>18</sub>)

Eleven (11) bits  $C_4$  to  $C_{14}$  of the packet header must be error-protected using the (15,11) BCH code that can correct one bit error. The generating polynomial must be as follows:

 $g(x) = x^4 + x + 1$ 

(vi) Data ( $C_{19}$  to  $C_{203}$ )

Bits  $C_{19}$  to  $C_{203}$  must be data that transmits sound.

- (2) Descriptions of bits for AC-packet configuration 2
- (i) Service identifier (C<sub>4</sub> to C<sub>7</sub>)

The service identifier must consist of 4 bits. "0000" indicates that AC transmission information is included in the packet. All other values are undefined.

(ii) Packet number (C<sub>8</sub> to C<sub>16</sub>)

These bits represent the sequence for sending packets for each service-identifier content. When we let the number of packets in a frame with service-identifier value x be N, the packet numbers must be 0 to N-1.

The total number of AC carriers is 351 when mode 3 and 13 segments are selected. Because nine (9) bits  $(2^9 - 1 = 511)$  are assigned to packet numbers, all carriers can be accommodated.

In mode 3 and with a guard-interval ratio of 1/4, the bit rate for one carrier (104 bits) is 104 bits/257.04 msec = 0.405 kbps. When all 351 carriers are used, the bit rate will be 142 kbps.

(iii) Max.-packet-number identifier (C<sub>17</sub>)

When we let the number of packets in a frame with service-identifier value x be N, this bit must contain 1 as the max.-packet-number identifier when the packet number is N-1, and 0 for any other value.

This flag is intended to indicate how many packets within a frame are used to transmit data with service-identifier value x.

(iv) Data ( $C_{18}$  to  $C_{121}$ )

Bits  $C_{18}$  to  $C_{121}$  must be data transmitted with AC-packet configuration 2.

(v) Parity bits ( $C_{122}$  to  $C_{203}$ )

Bits  $C_{122}$  to  $C_{203}$  must be parity bits for 118 bits from  $C_4$  to  $C_{121}$ . The shortened code (200,118) of the (273,191) difference cyclic code must be used as the error-correction code.

The generating polynomial of the (273,191) code is shown below. Note that this polynomial is identical to that of the TMCC error-correction code.

 $g(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{82} + \mathbf{x}^{77} + \mathbf{x}^{76} + \mathbf{x}^{71} + \mathbf{x}^{67} + \mathbf{x}^{66} + \mathbf{x}^{56} + \mathbf{x}^{52} + \mathbf{x}^{48}$  $+ \mathbf{x}^{40} + \mathbf{x}^{36} + \mathbf{x}^{34} + \mathbf{x}^{24} + \mathbf{x}^{22} + \mathbf{x}^{18} + \mathbf{x}^{10} + \mathbf{x}^{4} + \mathbf{1}$ 

## A2.4 Descriptions of bits in AC data and packet-transmission sequence

A2.4.1 Descriptions of bits for AC-packet configuration 1

The descriptions of bits in data transmitted with packet configuration 1 are as shown below.

(1) Sound-frame configuration

The number of bits in one sound-signal frame, including parity bits, is as shown in Table A2.2-1. A 5-bit synchronizing signal must be added to the beginning of each frame. Three sound frames must be used to make up one super sound frame. A 3-bit stuffing-bit identifier must be added after the 5-bit synchronizing signal of the third frame in a super sound frame, in order to adjust the number of stuffing bits for each frame.

Fig. A2.4-1 shows the super sound frame configuration, while Tables A2.4-1 and A2.4-2 provide descriptions of bits in a super sound frame and specify the number of stuffing bits, respectively. Note that sound frames are independent of OFDM frames.



Fig. A2.4-1: Configuration of a Super Sound Frame

Description	Bits/frame	Frame 1	Frame 2	Frame 3	Remarks
		00100	11010	11110	FC0 = (00100 11010 11110)
Synchronization bits	5 bits	11011	00101	00001	FC1 = (11011 00101 00001) FC0 and FC1 alternate every super frame.
	-	-	-	000	SD0 = (000) SD1 = (111)
Sturning-bit identifier		-	-	111	SB0 – (000), SB1 – (111)
Sound-frame data	See Table A2.2-1.	-	-	-	Varies depending on the sound-coding scheme
Stuffing bits	See Table A2.4-2.	-	-	-	Varies depending on the sound-coding scheme

## Table A2.4-1: Description of Bits in a Super Sound Frame

## Table A2.4-2: Numbers of Stuffing Bits

Guard-In terval Ratio	SB0/ SB1	Frame No.	Sound-coding scheme 1	Sound-coding scheme 2	Sound-coding scheme 3	Sound-coding scheme 4	Sound-coding scheme 5
		Frame 1	0	0	5	13	3
	SB0	Frame 2	0	0	5	13	3
1/4		Frame 3	0	0	5	13	3
1/4		Frame 1	0	0	5	13	3
	SB1	Frame 2	0	0	5	13	3
		Frame 3	0 + 1	0 + 1	5 + 1	13 + 1	3 + 2
		Frame 1	25	25	41	41	25
	SB0	Frame 2	25	25	41	41	25
1/0		Frame 3	25	25	41	41	25
1/8	SB1	Frame 1	25	25	41	41	25
		Frame 2	25	25	41	41	25
		Frame 3	25 + 3	25 + 3	41 + 2	41 + 3	25 + 3
		Frame 1	40	40	63	58	39
	SB0	Frame 2	40	40	63	58	39
1/10		Frame 3	40	40	63	58	39
1/16		Frame 1	40	40	63	58	39
	SB1	Frame 2	40	40	63	58	39
		Frame 3	40 + 3	40 + 3	63 + 2	58 + 3	39 + 1
		Frame 1	49	49	75	68	46
	SB0	Frame 2	49	49	75	68	46
1/00		Frame 3	49	49	75	68	46
1/32		Frame 1	49	49	75	68	46
	SB1	Frame 2	49	49	75	68	46
	1	Frame 3	49 + 1	49 + 1	75 + 1	68 + 1	46 + 1

(2) Assignment of sound-frame data to AC packets

To minimize transmission delay, AC sound data (shown in (1)) must be assigned to packets as shown in Fig. A2.4-2.



Fig. A2.4-2: Sequence for Transmitting AC-Packet Data (Example in Mode 2)

## A2.4.2 Description of bits for AC-packet configuration 2

Descriptions of bits in data transmitted with packet configuration 2 are given below.

Note that the data specified below is available when the service identifier in the packet header of AC-packet configuration 2 contains "0000." Note also that the descriptions of bits are undefined if the service identifier contains a value other than "0000."

#### (1) Basic data configuration

Table A2.4-3 shows the basic data configuration when the service identifier of AC-packet configuration 2 contains "0000."

Number of bits	Description	Remarks			
		Data-body identifier 00h: Indicates the data body transmitted with an AC (AC transmission information)			
8	Data-body identifier	01h: Indicates that the data body contains additional information on sound transmitted with packet configuration 1 (sound transmission information)			
		Others: Undefined			
8	Number of bytes transmitted	Represents the number of bytes $((x + y) / 8)$ available from the beginning of the data body to the end of the supplementary bits. Note that if this number is FFh, two bytes will be added as extension bits to indicate the number of bytes transmitted.			
X	Data body	Body of data to be transmitted			
y (0~7)	Supplementary bits (null bits)	Supplementary bits used to ensure that x + y is an integer. Each these bits must contain 0. y = mod {8 - mod (x,8), 8}			
16	16-bit CRC	CRC provided to detect errors bits from the data-body identifier to supplementary bits Generating polynomial: $g(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$			

## (2) AC transmission information

(i) Data body

Table A2.4-4 provides descriptions of bits in the data body (number of bits = x) presented in Table A2.4-3.

Table A2.4-4: Descriptions of Bits	When the Data Body	Contains AC T	ransmission Information

Number of bits	Description	Remarks	Nesting
1	Distinction between current and next information	0: AC transmission configuration being transmitted 1: AC transmission configuration after changes are made The next information must be transmitted after the current information.	0
1	Distinction between AC-packet configuration types	0: AC-packet configuration 1 1: AC-packet configuration 2	1
2	AC-packet transmission information	<ul><li>00: Not transmitted (will not be transmitted)</li><li>01: Transmitted (will be transmitted)</li><li>10: Undecided</li><li>11: Undefined</li></ul>	1
4	Service identifier and circuit No.	Configuration 1 (First 2 bits) 00: Sound 01: Extension (Next 2 bits): Circuit number 00 to 11: Circuit number Configuration 2 0000: Transmission information 0001 to 1111: Undefined	2
1	Service-identifier transmission information	0: Not transmitted (will not be transmitted) 1: Transmitted (will be transmitted)	2
2	AC-carrier identifier	00: Undefined 01: AC1 carriers used 10: AC2 carriers used 11: Both AC1 and AC2 carriers used	3
8 (16)	Max. packet number	Represents the max. number of packets for each value in the service identifier (circuit identifier). When the number of packets is N, the maximum number of packets is expressed as N-1. When the contents of these bits are FFh, one byte will be added. This additional byte will be used to represent the number of packets (N-255). N = 1:00h N = 255: FEh N = 256: FF00h N = 257: FF01h	3
4	Number of carriers carrying the same packet	Represents the number of AC carriers transmitting the same data. There is only one AC carrier when the contents of these bits are "0000."	3
4	Start segment No.	Represents the start segment number (0 to 12)	4
5	Start AC-carrier No.	Represents the start AC-carrier number (0 to 27)	4

Note 1: Nesting

- When "1" or a larger number is given under "Nesting," the next information is transmitted after the current information.
- When "2" or a larger number is given under "Nesting," that bit or those bits are transmitted if the contents of the AC-packet transmission identifier are "01" (transmitted).
- When "3" or a larger number is given under "Nesting", those bits are transmitted if the content of the service-identifier transmission information is "1" (transmitted).
- When "4" is given under "Nesting," those bits are transmitted as many times as the number of carriers carrying the same packet.

Note 2: AC carrier number

- The number of AC carriers used varies depending on the mode. The largest number of AC carriers is used in mode 3.
- When using both AC1 and AC2 carriers without any differentiation, AC1 and AC2 carriers must be numbered serially, beginning from the AC carrier position with the lowest frequency regardless of AC1 or AC2.

Note 3: End segment number and end AC-carrier number

• When a series of information (identical service number, identical circuit number) is transmitted using multiple AC carriers, consecutive AC carriers must be used. Because the maximum packet number, start segment number, and start AC-carrier number are given, the end segment number and end AC-carrier number can be obtained. Therefore, the end segment number and end AC-carrier number must not be sent.

(ii) Data volume

The data volume becomes minimal, or 14 bits (00001001000100) in length, when AC information is transmitted by neither the current nor the next information. The total data volume obtained by adding the basic data shown in Table A2.4-3 to the above data is six bytes. Therefore, all data can be transmitted using a single packet.

(iii) Limitations on transmission

When information is transmitted using an AC, it is preferable that the service identifier of AC-packet configuration 2 and the data-body identifier be set to 0000 and 00h, respectively, for sending AC transmission information.

- (3) Sound transmission information
- (i) Data body

Table A2.4-5 shows descriptions of bits in the data body (number of bits = x) presented in Table A2.4-3.

Table 0 / E.	Descriptions of	f Dita Whan the	Data Dadu	Containa Count	Tranamiaaian	Information
Table 2.4-5.			E Dala Duuy	/ Contains Sound	1 1101151111551011	momation

Number of bits	Description		Remarks	Nesting	
3	Number of circuits (B)		Represents the number of circuits used when sound signals are transmitted with AC-packet configuration 1. No sound signals are transmitted using an AC when these bits contain "0."		
3	Sound system	Repeatedly transmitted as many times as	Represents the sound system used for each circuit 0: Sound system 1; 1: Sound system 2; 2: Sound system 3; 3: Sound system 4; 4: Sound system 5; 5 or other: Undefined	1	
7	Number of packets	the number of circuits	Represents the number of packets in the OFDM frame transmitted with each circuit	1	

## (ii) Data volume

The data volume becomes maximal, or  $3 + 10 \ge 33$  bits, when 4-circuit sound signals are transmitted. The total data volume obtained by adding the basic data shown in Table A2.4-3 to the above data is nine bytes when the service identifier for AC-packet configuration 2 and the data-body identifier are set to 0000 and 01h. Therefore, all data can be transmitted using a single packet.

## (iii) Limitations on transmission

When sound signals are transmitted using AC-packet configuration 1, it is preferable to transmit the number of circuits used for sound signals and the coding scheme by setting the service identifier of AC-packet configuration 2 and the data-body identifier to 0000 and 01h, respectively.

(iv) Timing and frequency with which sound signals are transmitted

When sound signals are transmitted using AC-packet configuration 1, it is preferable to transmit them prior to and during the transmission of sound signals by setting the service identifier of AC-packet configuration 2 and the data-body identifier to 0000 and 01h, respectively. Note also that it is preferable to transmit the sound signals at least every 5 seconds.

# A2.5 AC-packet transmission

## A2.5.1 AC transmission capacity

	Guard-in	in Frame	Transmission capacity (kbps)							
Mode	terval	length	Per	Per se	Per segment		Per3 segment		Per13 segment	
	ratio	(ms)	carrier	AC1 only	AC2 only	AC1 only	AC2 only	AC1 only	AC2 only	
	1/4	64.2600	2.879	5.76	11.52	17.27	34.55	74.85	149.70	
1	1/8	57.8340	3.199	6.40	12.80	19.19	38.39	83.17	166.34	
1	1/16	54.6210	3.387	6.77	13.55	20.32	40.64	88.06	176.12	
	1/32	53.0145	3.490	6.98	13.96	20.94	41.88	90.73	181.46	
	1/4	128.5200	1.439	5.76	12.96	17.27	38.87	74.85	168.42	
9	1/8	115.6680	1.599	6.40	14.39	19.19	43.18	83.17	187.13	
2	1/16	109.2420	1.693	6.77	15.24	20.32	45.72	88.06	198.14	
	1/32	106.0290	1.745	6.98	15.70	20.94	47.11	90.73	204.14	
	1/4	257.0400	0.720	5.76	13.67	17.27	41.02	74.85	177.77	
0	1/8	231.3360	0.800	6.40	15.19	19.19	45.58	83.17	197.53	
3	1/16	218.4640	0.847	6.77	16.09	20.32	48.27	88.07	209.16	
	1/32	212.0580	0.872	6.98	16.58	20.94	49.73	90.73	215.48	

Table 2.5-1: Transmission capacity with AC-Packet Configuration 1 (1 Carrier = 185 bits)

	Guard-in	in Frame	Transmission capacity (kbps)							
Mode	terval	length	Per	Per se	Per segment		Per3 segment		Per13 segment	
	ratio	(ms)	carrier	AC1 only	AC2 only	AC1 only	AC2 only	AC1 only	AC2 only	
	1/4	64.2600	1.618	3.24	6.47	9.71	19.42	42.08	84.16	
1	1/8	57.8340	1.798	3.60	7.19	10.79	21.58	46.75	93.51	
1	1/16	54.6210	1.904	3.81	7.62	11.42	22.85	49.50	99.01	
	1/32	53.0145	1.962	3.92	7.85	11.77	23.54	51.00	102.01	
	1/4	128.5200	0.809	3.24	7.28	9.71	21.85	42.08	94.68	
0	1/8	115.6680	0.899	3.60	8.09	10.79	24.28	46.75	105.20	
2	1/16	109.2420	0.952	3.81	8.57	11.42	25.70	49.50	111.39	
	1/32	106.0290	0.981	3.92	8.83	11.77	26.48	51.00	114.76	
	1/4	257.0400	0.405	3.24	7.69	9.71	23.06	42.08	99.94	
	1/8	231.3360	0.450	3.60	8.54	10.79	25.63	46.75	111.04	
3	1/16	218.4640	0.476	3.81	9.04	11.43	27.13	49.51	117.58	
	1/32	212.0580	0.490	3.92	9.32	11.77	27.95	51.00	121.14	

## A2.5.2 Number of Carriers Used

Table A2.5-3 shows the number of carriers required to transmit five (5) types of sound having AC-packet configuration 1, and additional sound-related information having AC-packet configuration 2.

		Sound system 1	Sound system 2	Sound system 3	Sound system 4	Sound system 5	Additional sound information
	Mode 1	2	4	23	18	14	1
Number of carriers	Mode 2	4	8	46	36	28	1
	Mode 3	8	16	92	72	56	1
Number of segments (simultaneously modulated)	Mode 1,2,3	1	2	12	9	7	1
Number of segments (differentially modulated)	Mode 1,2,3	1	1	4	3	3	1

Table A2.5-3: Number of Carriers Used

## A2.5.3 Sound bit rate

The sound bit rate is as shown below when 185 bits per AC packet are transmitted using AC-packet configuration 1. Note that the bit rate does not vary depending on the mode, but on the guard-interval ratio.

Mode	Guard-i nterval ratio	Frame length (ms)	Bit rate per carrier (kbps)	2 carriers (M1) 4 carriers (M2) 8 carriers (M3)	4 carriers (M1) 8 carriers (M2) 16 carriers (M3)	14 carriers (M1) 28 carriers (M2) 56 carriers (M3)	18 carriers (M1) 36 carriers (M2) 72 carriers (M3)	23 carriers (M1) 46 carriers (M2) 92 carriers (M3)
		(ms)	(kbps)	(kbps)	(kbps)	(kbps)	(kbps)	(kbps)
	1/4	64.2600	2.88	5.76	11.52	40.31	51.82	66.22
1	1/8	57.8340	3.20	6.40	12.80	44.78	57.58	73.57
1	1/16	54.6210	3.39	6.77	13.55	47.42	60.97	77.90
	1/32	53.0145	3.49	6.98	13.96	48.85	62.81	80.26
	1/4	128.5200	1.44	5.76	11.52	40.31	51.82	66.22
9	1/8	115.6680	1.60	6.40	12.80	44.78	57.58	73.57
2	1/16	109.2420	1.69	6.77	13.55	47.42	60.97	77.90
	1/32	106.0290	1.74	6.98	13.96	48.85	62.81	80.26
	1/4	257.0400	0.72	5.76	11.52	40.31	51.82	66.22
3	1/8	231.3360	0.80	6.40	12.80	44.78	57.58	73.57
	1/16	218.4640	0.85	6.77	13.55	47.42	60.97	77.91
	1/32	212.0580	0.87	6.98	13.96	48.85	62.81	80.26

Table A2.5-4: Bit Rate for Sound with Synchronization Bits

## A2.6 Case study on the timing of AC data transmission by dummy bytes

Regarding AC data transmission by dummy bytes, the followings are several timing models of TSP with AC\_data\_invalid\_flag = "0" (hereinafter referred to as "AC data dummy byte transmission TSP") among TSPs input to the OFDM modulator, which are studied in accordance with Section 6.4.2 "Considerations in the timing of multiplexing on dummy bytes" in the Attachment.

## A2.6.1 Timing model study

(1) Premises							
- Mode and guard ratio:	Mode 3, ratio = $1/8$						
- AC carriers used:	only AC1 (all 13 segments are s	synchronized)					
- AC_data_effective_position	= "1" (dummy byte data is used)						
- AC_data_effective_bytes	= "00" (1 byte used)						
(2) Basic data (Mode 3, guard ra	tio = 1/8)						
- Number of transmission TSPs (all transmission TSPs) contained							
in one OFDM frame		= 4608 [TSP]					
- Number of TSPs corresponding to one symbol = 4608 ÷ 204 [symbol] = 22.58824 [TSP]							
- Amount of AC data sent by one	= 13 [byte] (only AC1)						
- Amount of AC data sent by one	= 13 [byte] x 203 [symbol]						
		= 2639 [byte] (only AC1)					
- Amount of AC data sent by one	e TSP	=1 [byte]					
		(1 dummy byte used)					
- Number of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs in one OFDM frame = 2639 [TSP]							

## A2.6.1.1 Timing model considering uniformity

Regarding AC data input to the OFDM modulator as dummy bytes, a timing model considering uniformity in the OFDM frame is studied. This model allows for minimization of required buffer capacity for AC data in the OFDM modulator.

From the basic data, about 22 TSPs correspond to the duration of one symbol. Two types with different numbers of unit block TSPs (22 and 23 TSPs) are defined in consideration of fractions

The number of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs for the duration of each symbol shall be 13 for symbols 0 to 202. Thus, the number of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs per unit block is 13. Because the amount of AC data to be transmitted only needs to be input in each unit block, the pattern of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs in the unit block is not defined. Based on the above consideration, two timing models are defined:

(i) When unit blocks are divided into three parts for transmission in the OFDM frame

- $\circ$  Data configuration
  - All transmission TSPs

22 [TSP] x 84 + 23 [TSP] x 120 = 4608 [TSP]

- AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs

13 [TSP] x 84 + 13 [TSP] x 119 = 2639 [TSP]

 Timing model (expressed in the form of "number of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs / number of unit block TSPs")

- Unit blocks 0 to 83

13 / 22 x 84

- Unit blocks 84 to 202

13 / 23 x 19 - Unit block 203 0 / 23 x 1

(ii) When 17 symbols are taken as one unit for transmission in consideration of repetition  $\circ$  Data configuration

All transmission TSPs

(22 [TSP] x 7 + 23 [TSP] x 10 ) x 12 = 4608 [TSP]

AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs

(13 [TSP] x 7 + 13 [TSP] x 10) x 11 + (13 [TSP] x 7 + 13 [TSP] x 9) x 1 = 2639 [TSP]

Timing model (expressed in the form of "number of AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs

number of unit block TSPs")

Unit blocks 0 to 186

((13 / 22 x 7) + (13 / 23 x 10)) x 11

 $((13/22 \times 7) + (13/23 \times 10)) \times 11$ - Unit blocks 187 to 203  $((13/22 \times 7) + (13/23 \times 9) + (0/23 \times 1))$ 

## A2.6.1.2 Timing model without considering uniformity

Regarding AC data input to the OFDM modulator by dummy bytes, a timing model without considering uniformity in the OFDM frame is studied. This model allows for maximization of required buffer capacity for AC data in the OFDM modulator.

- (i) When all AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs are input sequentially from the head of the OFDM frame
- Data configuration
  - All transmission TSPs
    - 4608 [TSP]
- AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs
- 2639 [TSP]
- $\circ$  Timing model

Among all 4608 transmission TSPs, the first 2639 TSPs from the head of the OFDM frame are AC data dummy byte transmission TSPs and the remaining 1969 TSPs are not.

## Appendix 3: Considerations in the Link Budgets for ISDB-T

To create a broadcast-wave network for ISDB-T, it is necessary to design link budget between the studio output and the receiver in accordance with the noise (permissible degradation) allocated to the transmitting side.

In the link budgets, the performance of each piece of broadcasting equipment must be determined. At the same time, the reception quality in the previous stage and across the service area must be specified when broadcast waves are relayed.

A broadcast network in particular is predicated on broadcast waves being received by multiple recipients (receivers). Therefore, it is necessary to create a network capable of withstanding the harshest conditions within the service area (fringe in general).

However, conditions associated with signal propagation, such as multipath disturbance and radio interference disturbance, vary depending not only on individual relay stations, but also on the locations at which receiving antennas are installed within the service area.

For this reason, we have developed a broadcasting-network model and reception model within the service area based on the current conditions under which analog broadcasting networks are operating and the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council.

Because it may be difficult to satisfy the model case requirements or these requirements may be discovered to be excessively rigorous during the actual network construction process, the design must be reviewed based on the results of review given in this document.

## A3.1 Review procedure

In the review steps shown in Section A3.2 onward, we used the following procedure to present considerations in the link budgets, assuming that broadcast waves would be relayed:

- We selected hypothetical stage-to-stage distances between broadcasting stations, and hypothetical levels of radio interference and multipath disturbance within the service area. We selected a network model extending from the studio output to receivers.
- (2) We assumed that broadcast waves would be received by stationary receivers. We also assumed that receiving systems (e.g., antenna and booster conditions) based on the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council would be used.
- (3) In the link budgets, we selected provisional values based on our assumptions provisional equivalent C/N ratios for various types of interference-affected broadcasting equipment, receivers, and channels (C/N ratios determined by treating equipment deterioration and various types of interference as noise).

## A3.2 Assumptions made in link budget

## A3.2.1 Network model

(1) Stage-to-stage distance

We conducted a survey of 2,485 analog stations across the country to determine the distance from the main station to the 1st-stage relay station, as well as the distances between relay stations at various stages, and selected stage-to-stage distances that include 80% of all stations.

	Stage-to-stage distance						
	50% value 80% value		90% value 950% value		99% value		
Main station – 1st stage	30.1 km	52.5 km	66.8 km	78.5 km	118.4 km		
1st stage – 2nd stage	st stage – 2nd stage 12.3 km 25.		$32.5~\mathrm{km}$	40.9 km	61.7 km		
2nd stage – 3rd stage	11.6 km	23.1 km	31.3 km	39.9 km	57.2 km		
3rd stage – 4th stage	7.4 km	16.3 km	$25.3~\mathrm{km}$	41.1 km	67.7 km		
4th stage – 5th stage	10.9 km	23.7 km	49.8 km	64.5 km	95.4 km		
5th stage – 6th stage	4.7 km	9.5 km	17.9 km	21.4 km	38.3 km		
6th stage – 7th stage	2.6 km	5.8 km	5.8 km	5.8 km	5.8 km		

Table A3.2-1: Stage-to-Stage Distances in an Analog Broadcasting Network

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

(2) Fading loss during the relaying of broadcast waves

We selected fading loss for each stage-to-stage distance (value that includes 80% of all stations selected in (1)) under the assumption that 99.9% fading margin will be available.

Table A3.2-2: 99.9% Fading Margin Selected Based on a Stage-to-Stage Distance Acceptable for 80% of All Stations

Relay station	To 1st Stage	To 2nd Stage	To 3rd Stage	To 4th Stage	To 5th Stage	To 6th Stage	To 7th Stage
Stage-to-sta ge distance	52.5 km	25.1 km	23.1 km	16.3 km	23.7 km	9.5 km	5.8 km
Fading loss	13.1 dB	8.7 dB	8.4 dB	$7.3~\mathrm{dB}$	$8.5~\mathrm{dB}$	6.7  dB	4.1 dB

(3) Maximum number of stages

With the current analog broadcasting network, broadcast waves are relayed by up to seven stages. However, we selected four stages as the maximum number of stages for the model case for which we implemented the link budget.

Table A3.2-3: Number of Analog (Relay) Broadcasting Stations Included in Each Stage

	Main station	1st stage	2nd stage	3rd stage	4th stage	5th stage	6th stage	7th stage
Number of stations	54	975	761	452	211	62	21	3
Total number of stations	54	1,029	1,790	2,242	2,453	2,515	2,536	2,539

## A3.2.2 Transmitter model



Fig. A3.2-1: Transmission-Circuit Model

(1) Transmission channel

The transmission channel determines the affects of urban noise, receiving-antenna gain, on the conversion of field strength to terminal voltage. The higher the channel frequency, the lower the level of urban noise and the higher the receiving-antenna gain. In contrast, the lower the channel frequency, the longer the effective antenna length (the higher the converted terminal voltage).

In this link budget, we selected 13 channels, which is a generally rigorous condition.

(2) Broadcasting equipment at the main station

Broadcasting equipment at the main station must consist of an STL transmitter-receiver, OFDM modulator, and main-station transmitter.

As shown in Fig. A3.2-1, different signals are transmitted by the STL transmitter-receiver, depending on the location of the OFDM modulator.

If the OFDM modulator is provided at the transmitting station, the STL transmitter-receiver sends the digital signal (TS signal) to the transmitting station, where TS is reproduced and then modulated by the OFDM modulator (hereinafter referred to as the "TS transmission system").

On the other hand, if the OFDM modulator is provided at the studio, the STL transmitter-receiver sends the waves modulated by the OFDM modulator to the transmitting station as is (hereinafter referred to as the "IF transmission system").

The above two cases were reviewed.

• Case 1 (TS transmission system)

When the TS transmission system is used, TS is reproduced at the transmitting station. Therefore, it is not necessary to consider any degradation caused by the STL circuit in the link budget process. As a result, only the possible degradation from the OFDM modulator onward should be calculated.

As the provisional equivalent C/N ratio of the transmitter, we selected 45 dB. The two main factors in degradation of the transmitter's C/N ratio are IM and phase noise.

As for degradation caused by phase noise, we selected 50 dB as the equivalent C/N ratio.

It is known that IM can vary depending on whether a PD (predistortion) or FF (feedforward) system is used.

In general, a PD system provides relatively high efficiency but cannot ensure linearity, while an FF system ensures linearity but not high efficiency.

Because the main station's transmitter likely has a high transmission output, we selected 40 dB as the IM, under the assumption that a PD system was used.

The study conducted using an actual transmitter shows that the equivalent C/N ratio is 2 dB lower than the value obtained by inverting the a sign of IM. Therefore, we selected 38 dB as the provisional equivalent C/N ratio of the main station's transmitter caused by IM.

• Case 2 (IF transmission system)

When an IF transmission system is used, the OFDM signal is sent from the studio to the main station's transmitter. Therefore, it is necessary to calculate the level of degradation caused by the STL circuit. We selected 37.7 dB as the equivalent C/N ratio (sum of the C/N ratios of the STL transmitter-receiver and the main station's transmitter) to enable the C/N ratio for the main-station output in case 1 to be secured.



Fig. A3.2-2: Example of Distribution of the Equivalent C/N Ratio for the Main Station's Transmitter When a TS Transmission System is Used for STL (Case 1)



Fig. A3.2-3: Example of Distribution of the Equivalent C/N Ratio for the Main Station's Transmitter When an IF Transmission System is Used for STL (Case 2)

- (3) Relay broadcasting equipment
- Reception of a signal from a higher-rank station

When we assume that broadcast waves are relayed, the possible factors causing a degraded C/N ratio during the reception of a signal by relay broadcasting equipment are thermal noise associated with field strength, multipath, interference, and the SFN sneak path.

We calculated the field strength at each stage for all analog UHF stations, and selected a level 10 dB below the level of field strength acceptable for 80% of all stations as the provisional value, as the transmission power for digital broadcasting is 10 dB lower than that for analog UHF.

As for the noise factor, we selected NF = 3 dB as the provisional value in consideration of the actual noise factor for the current analog relay broadcasting equipment.

On the other hand, the extent to which the C/N ratio is degraded by multipath disturbance, interference, and the SFN sneak path varies substantially depending on the reception point, antenna used, and performance of the cancellers (if any). We believe, therefore, that each of these factors must be reviewed on an individual basis in the construction of your own network.

In this link budget, as discussed in (3) of Section A3.2.1, we used various provisional

values necessary to implement 4-stage relaying of broadcast waves, and selected 38.2 dB as the equivalent C/N ratio for all types of distortion.

• Relay station's transmitter

The transmitter output at a relay station is likely to be lower than that of the main station.

For this reason, we selected 48 dB as the provisional equivalent C/N ratio of a transmitter caused by IM, in consideration of the fact that an FF system can be used as discussed in (1) of Section A3.2.2.

On the other hand, we selected 50 dB as equivalent C/N ratio caused by phase noise, as with the main station.



Fig. A3.2-4: Example of Distribution of the Equivalent C/N Ratio for the Relay Station's Transmitter
### A3.2.3 Reception model within service area

(1) Receiving antenna

According to the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council, the channel plan was established under the assumption that a 14-element Yagi antenna would be used. For this reason, we selected a Yagi antenna with a gain of 7 dB.

### (2) Field strength

We selected 60 dB $\mu$ V/m as the field strength based on said report.

As for the fading margin, we first made calculations to determine the size of the area for each stage in which the field strength was 70 dB $\mu$ V/m, a level that is currently required for analog broadcasting. Next, we calculated the distance that was acceptable for 95% of all stations. Finally, we selected the levels of fading margin in which a 99% time rate could be achieved.

Table A3.2-4: Fading Margin (in which a 99% Time Rate can be Achieved) Corresponding to an Area Size Acceptable for 95% of All Stations

	Main station	1st stage	2nd stage	3rd stage	4th stage	5th stage	6th stage	7th stage
Max. area radius	-	35 km	$25~\mathrm{km}$	20 km	20 km	20 km	12 km	8 km
Fading margin	9 dB	5  dB	4  dB	4  dB	4  dB	4 dB	4  dB	4  dB

(3) Receiver thermal noise

Based on said report, we assumed that a low-noise booster (NF = 3.3 dB) would be used to prevent area fringe.

Note also that we selected 1 dB as the feeder loss from the antenna to the booster.

(4) Multipath disturbance and interference

Multipath disturbance within the service area varies substantially depending not only on the network status (affected by whether an SFN (Single-Frequency Network) is used), but also on the receiving-antenna location and neighboring buildings and structures. Note that interference disturbance caused by other digital waves and analog broadcast waves also varies drastically depending on the specific stationary-station conditions, receiving-antenna installation conditions, and fading between undesired and desired waves. According to the link budget included in the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council, a DU ratio of 10 dB (1 dB of degradation from a C/N ratio of 22 dB when 64QAM and 7/8 are selected as the modulation scheme and inner-code coding rate, respectively) was taken into consideration as multipath disturbance caused, for example, by SFN within the service area. In the same link budget, 2 dB of degradation from the C/N ratio of 22 dB was considered interference disturbance caused by analog broadcasting and other digital broadcasting.

For this reason, it is necessary to conduct a more specific and detailed survey within the service area. As a model case, we selected 25 dB as the equivalent C/N ratio for both multipath and interference disturbance, a ratio that corresponds to 3 dB of degradation from the required C/N ratio of 22 dB (C/N ratio at which  $2 \ge 10^{-4}$  can be achieved following inner-code correction; see Fig. A3.2-5).

Note also that Fig. A3.2-6 shows the relationship between the multipath DU ratio (at which an equivalent C/N ratio of 25 dB can be achieved) and interference (co-channel interference). The equivalent C/N ratio is 25 dB in the area above the curve. When the levels of multipath disturbance and interference are above the curve (in the area to the upper right), the model-case requirement can be met, that is, an equivalent C/N ratio of 25 dB can be achieved.



Fig. A3.2-5: Equivalent C/N Ratio as a Function of Degradation from a C/N Ratio of 22 dB



Fig. A3.2-6 Relationship between the Multipath DU Ratio (at which an Equivalent C/N Ratio of 25 dB can be achieved) and Co-Channel Interference

(5) Urban noise

We selected 700 K as the level of urban noise. This value is equivalent to that of 13 channels in the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council.

(6) Receiver's deterioration

The equivalent C/N ratio of the receiver should be selected in consideration of the availability of commercial receivers. However, we selected 28 dB as the provisional equivalent C/N ratio (1.3 dB of degradation from 22 dB) for use as a model case in the link budget process.





Fig. A3.2-7: Example of Distribution of the Equivalent C/N Ratio for the Reception Model

## A3.2.4 Provisional values selected for the link budget model

Table A3.2-5 lists the provisional values selected from Sections A3.2.1 to A3.2.3.

As specified in these sections, these values were merely provisional, and were selected for link budget purposes. None of these values represents in any way the goals or guidelines for equipment development efforts.

Equipment		Parameter	Provisional value	Remarks
	TS	Equivalent C/N ratio	$\infty$	No degradation with TS transmission system
STL	IF	Equivalent C/N ratio		To be evaluated in conjunction with the main station's transmitter characteristics
OFDM n	nodulator	Equivalent C/N ratio	45  dB	Phase noise = $48 \text{ dB}$ ; $1\text{M} = -50 \text{ dB}$ or less
		Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of phase noise	50 dB	
Main s trans	tation's mitter	Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of IM (During TS transmission)	38 dB	PD system, 1M = -40 dB or less
		Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of IM (During IF transmission)		37.7 dB (STL equivalent C/N ratio and phase noise combined)
		Distance from previous stage	80%	80% of all stations included
		Circuit cutoff rate	0.1%	Area cutoff rate: 1% (99% time rate)
t		Fading loss	99.9%	99.9% (based on UHF Television transmission and reception)
quipmen	Receiving	Field strength	80%	Field-strength level acceptable for 80% of all stations (based on the field strengths at all analog UHF stations)
т С	system	Receiving antenna	1.8 m ø	1.8 m grid parabola (gain: 13 dB)
stin		Feeder loss	2 dB	
elay broadcas	NF	3 dB		
		Equivalent C/N ratio (co-channel interference, multipath disturbance, SFN sneak path combined)	38.2 dB	Equivalent to 43 dB (if all 3 degradations occur under the same conditions)
Trans		Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of phase noise	50  dB	Same as main station
	system	Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of IM	48 dB	FF system, IM = -50 dB or less
		Standard field strength	60 dB	Required field strength in the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council
		Max. distance (transmission point – receiver)	95%	Max. radius acceptable for 95% of all stations
		Fading margin	99%	99% value based on area max. distance
Receiver		Receiving antenna	14-element	14-element Yagi antenna
		Feeder loss	1 dB	
		NF	3.3 dB	Use of booster
		Equivalent C/N ratio (interference and multipath disturbance combined)	25  dB	
		Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of receiver deterioration	28 dB	1.3 dB of degradation from 22 dB

Table AO O F. Dravisianal		Colostadf	بامتا الماد	Dudaat	
Table A3.2-5: Provisional	values	Selected to	OF LINK	Budget	Purposes

#### Example of link budget A3.3

Feeder loss

(11) Noise power

(12) C/N of receiver only

(14) Interference and multipath C/N

(13) C/N of receiver output

(15) Equivalent C/N ratio

(receiver's equipment deterioration) (16) Demodulator input C/N dB

dBm

 $^{\rm dB}$ 

 $^{\rm dB}$ 

dB

dB

1.0

-99.3

28.4

27.9

25.0

28.0

22.0

1.0

-99.3

32.4

30.1

25.0

28.0

22.4

1.0

-99.3

33.5

29.8

25.0

28.0

22.4

1.0

-99.3

33.5

29.1

25.0

28.0

22.2

			-		-					
		0th stage	1st stage	2nd stage	3rd stage	4th stage	5th stage	6th stage	7th stage	Remarks
(1) C/N of received waves	dB		37.0	33.9	32.2	31.0	30.0	29.2	28.5	0th stage: Main station
Distance from previous stage	km		52.5	25.1	23.1	16.3	23.7	9.5	5.8	80% value (number of stations)
Field strength	dBf	-	72.8	70.8	68.8	68.0	67.0	68.7	64.1	80% value (number of stations); UHF receiving stations only
Fading loss	dB	-	-13.1	-8.7	-8.4	-7.3	-8.5	-6.7	-4.1	99.9% value in terms of distance
Field strength during fading	dB	-	59.7	62.1	60.4	60.7	58.5	62.0	60.0	
Receiving-antenna gain	dBi	-	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	$1.8 \text{ m grid parabola} (50 \Omega)$
Adjustment value	dB	-	-3.7	-3.7	-3.7	-3.7	-3.7	-3.7	-3.7	2.1 (relative gain) + 1.6 (conversion from 50 Ω)
λ/π	dB	-	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	13ch
Feeder loss	dB	-	-2.0	-2.0	-2.0	-2.0	-2.0	-2.0	-2.0	
Terminal correction value	dB	-	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	
Terminal voltage	dBt	-	49.1	51.5	49.8	50.1	47.9	51.4	49.4	60 dBt (analog)
Value converted from dBm	dB	-	-107.0	-107.0	-107.0	-107.0	-107.0	-107.0	-107.0	50 Ω
(2) Received power	dBm	-	-57.9	-55.5	-57.2	-56.9	-59.1	-55.6	-57.6	
kTB	dB	-	-106.3	-106.3	-106.3	-106.3	-106.3	-106.3	-106.3	$T = 300^{\circ}, B = 5.6 \text{ MHz}$
Noise factor (NF)	dB	-	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	
(3) Noise power	dBm	-	-103.3	-103.3	-103.3	-103.3	-103.3	-103.3	-103.3	(1) $(2)$ $(3)$
(4) C/N of HA only	dB	-	45.4	47.8	46.1	46.4	44.2	47.7	45.7	(4) = (2) - (3)
(5) Total degradation as a result of interference, etc.			38.2	38.2	38.2	38.2	38.2	38.2	38.2	
(6) C/N of HA output (Main station: OFDM modulator)	dB	45.0	34.2	32.4	31.1	30.1	29.3	28.6	28.0	(6) = (1) + (4) + (5)
(7) C/N of transmitter (phase noise)	dB	50.0	50.0	50.0	50.0	50.0	50.0	50.0	50.0	Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of phase noise
(8) C/N of transmitter (IM)	dB	38.0	48.0	48.0	48.0	48.0	48.0	48.0	48.0	Equivalent C/N ratio as a result of IM
(9) C/N of relay-station output	dB	37.0	33.9	32.2	31.0	30.0	29.2	28.5	27.9	(9) = (6) + (7) + (8)
Standard received field strength	dBf	60.0	60.0	60.0	60.0	60.0	60.0	60.0	60.0	
Max. distance (transmission point - reception point)	km	*	35.0	25.0	20.0	20.0	20.0	12.0	8.0	Max. radius acceptable for 95% of all stations
Fading loss	dB	-9.0	-5.0	-4.0	-4.0	-4.0	-4.0	-4.0	-4.0	ITU-R P.370-7 (99% value)
Field strength during fading	dBf	51.0	55.0	56.0	56.0	56.0	56.0	56.0	56.0	
Receiving-antenna gain	dBd	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	7.0	14-element Yagi antenna (for 13 to 44 channels)
λ/π	dB	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	-13.9	13ch
Terminal correction value	dB	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	-6.0	
Terminal voltage	dBt	38.1	42.1	43.1	43.1	43.1	43.1	43.1	43.1	
Value converted from dBm	dB	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	-109.0	75 Ω
(10) Received power	dBm	-70.9	-66.9	-65.9	-65.9	-65.9	-65.9	-65.9	-65.9	
Bandwidth: B	MHz	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	
Urban noise: 700 k	k	700.0	700.0	700.0	700.0	700.0	700.0	700.0	700.0	Та
Ground temperature: 300 k	k	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	300.0	То
Booster noise factor (NF)	dB	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	3.3	Low-noise booster used

#### Table A3.3-1: Example of Link Budget for Relaying Broadcast Waves

1.0

-99.3

33.5

28.4

25.0

28.0

22.1

1.0

-99.3

33.5

27.8

25.0

28.0

21.9

1.0

-99.3

33.5

27.3

25.0

28.0

21.8

25.0

28.0

-99.3 KB(Ta+To+To\*(NF\*L-1)) 33.5  $(12) = (10) \cdot (11)$ 

21.7 (16) = (13) + (14) + (15)

 $26.9 \quad (13) = (9) + (12)$ 

1.0 Between antenna and booster

Equivalent C/N ratio as a

result of interference and multipath disturbance

#### ARIB STD-B31 Version 2.2-E1

Table A3.3-1 shows an example of link budget in which broadcast waves are assumed to be relayed.

As discussed in (3) of Section A3.2.1, when the maximum number of stages for relaying broadcast waves is 4, a demodulator-input C/N ratio of 22 dB or higher is available, indicating that the C/N ratio requirement (22 dB) for 64QAM and the inner-code coding ratio of 7/8 are met.

Table A3.3-2 presents the transmission parameters and required C/N ratio selected for ISDB-T.

As mentioned later in Section A3.6, the robuster transmission parameters are selected against interference, the more margin is gained for the demodulator C/N ratio to be secured. However, such selection will result in lower transmission capacities, as shown in Table A3.3-3. Therefore, link budget must be carefully considered not only from service contents view point, but also from selection of transmission parameters.

Modulation		Inne	er-code coding	ratio	
scheme	1/2	2/3	3/4	5/6	7/8
DQPSK	$6.2~\mathrm{dB}$	$7.7~\mathrm{dB}$	8.7 dB	9.6 dB	10.4 dB
16QAM	$11.5~\mathrm{dB}$	$13.5~\mathrm{dB}$	14.6 dB	$15.6~\mathrm{dB}$	16.2  dB
64QAM	$16.5~\mathrm{dB}$	18.7 dB	$20.1~\mathrm{dB}$	$21.3~\mathrm{dB}$	$22.0~\mathrm{dB}$

Tahla A3 3-2.	Transmission	Parametere	and Rea	uired C/N Ratio
	110113111331011	i arameters	and rucy	

Modulation		In	ner-code coding ra	tio	
scheme	1/2	2/3	3/4	5/6	7/8
DQPSK	4.056 Mbit/s	5.409 Mbit/s	6.085 Mbit/s	6.761 Mbit/s	7.099 Mbit/s
16QAM	8.113 Mbit/s	10.818 Mbit/s	12.170 Mbit/s	13.522 Mbit/s	14.198 Mbit/s
64QAM	12.170 Mbit/s	16.227 Mbit/s	18.255 Mbit/s	20.284 Mbit/s	21.298 Mbit/s

Note: Mode 3 and a guard interval ratio of 1/8 are selected.

The transmission capacity or data rate represents the TS rate when all 13 segments are used (188 bytes).

# A3.4 Standard settings for transmitting equipment in network

Provisional values were used in the link budget for the ISDB-T transmission network shown in Section A3.3. Each value must be taken into consideration in the actual network construction process.

Note, however, that because we deal with a broadcasting network, the key factor in the design should be to protect the reception environment within the service area as much as possible.

For this reason, we present standard settings for transmitting equipment for reference purposes, to ensure a proper reception environment within the service area discussed in Section A3.2.3.

- (1) When the service area is large and requires a fading margin of approximately 9 dB, the equivalent C/N ratio for the main or relay station's transmitter output must be 37 dB.
- (2) When the service area is relatively small, with a fading margin of 5 dB or less, the equivalent C/N ratio for the main or relay station's transmitter output must be 30 dB.

If the corresponding criterion is met, the reception model within the service area discussed in Section A3.2.3 will be available.

Note, however, that with a very small area as in the case of a relay station at the end of a line or a gap filler, the reception environment within that area is likely to be relatively stable. In such a case, the equivalent C/N ratio of 30 dB is excessive and may result in increased transmitting-equipment costs. Therefore, extreme caution must be exercised in the use of the above values.

Fig. A3.4-1 shows the equivalent C/N ratio for the transmitter output as a function of the required received field strength within the service area.

When the output C/N ratio is 37 dB, program signals can be properly received as long as the received field strength is approximately 51 dB $\mu$ V/m. In this case, a fading margin of approximately 9 dB is ensured, considering that the standard field strength is 60 dB $\mu$ V/m.



Fig. A3.4-1: Equivalent C/N Ratio for Transmitter Output as a Function of the Required Received Field Strength within the Service Area

Area radiuses and fading margins, obtained from the P370-7 propagation characteristics of the ITU-R Recommendations, are included in the appendix to the Fiscal 1999 Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council.

Transmission				Area radius			
height	10 km	20 km	30 km	40 km	50 km	70 km	100 km
300 m	1  dB	$0.5~\mathrm{dB}$	$1.5~\mathrm{dB}$	3  dB	4  dB	7  dB	11 dB
150 m	1  dB	1  dB	3  dB	$5~\mathrm{dB}$	6  dB	9  dB	12  dB
75 m	2  dB	3  dB	4  dB	6  dB	6  dB	9  dB	$12.5~\mathrm{dB}$
37.5 m	4 dB	4  dB	4 dB	$6.5~\mathrm{dB}$	7  dB	9 dB	12  dB

Table A3.4-1: Fading Margins obtained from the P370-7 Propagation Characteristics of the ITU-R Recommendations

When reviewing networks on an individual basis, first determine the fading margin based on the transmission height and area radius in Table A3.4-1 that correspond to the service area, and then find the equivalent C/N ratio for the transmitter output in Fig. 3.4-1 that is appropriate for the fading margin that was determined.

Note, however, that if there are any lower-rank stations, the service areas of those stations should be taken into consideration in determining the equivalent C/N ratio.

#### A3.4.1 Study on the impact of changes to provisional values on overall link budget

 Impact of changes to the equivalent C/N ratio of the main station's transmitter As discussed in (2) of Section A3.2.2, 37.7 dB was selected as the provisional equivalent C/N ratio of the main station's transmitter.

If this C/N ratio of main transmitter changes from 42 dB to 34 dB, the other transmitter-output C/N ratio changes as shown in Fig. A3.4-2. Note that in this case, the provisional values for relay stations given in Table A.3.2-5 were used.

This figure shows that it is possible to provide a transmitter-output C/N ratio of approximately 30 dB when the relay-station performance matches the provisional value, even if the equivalent C/N ratio of the main station's transmitter is approximately 34 dB, provided that the main station's service area is not excessively large and that there are no more than three stages of relay stations.

For this reason, there may be no problem, depending on the service-area status and the number of stages, even if the C/N ratio of the main station's transmitter is degraded, as long as the STL transmitter-receiver of the IF system is used.



Fig. A3.4-2: Impact of Changes to the Equivalent C/N Ratio of the Main Station's Transmitter on the Transmitter-Output C/N Ratio

(2) Study on the use of multi-element Yagi antenna

A 14-element Yagi antenna was selected as the receiving antenna, and 7 dB was used as its gain. Table A3.4-3 shows the extent to which the reception C/N ratio can be improved when a high-gain antenna with gain of approximately 10 dB is used to prevent problems such as area fringe.

In general, the higher the antenna gain, the more directional the antenna becomes. As a result, such higher gain may provide reduced multipath and interference disturbance. However, the figure shows that if we suppose that impact of the disturbance remains unchanged, 3 dB of additional gain can improve the demodulator-input C/N ratio by only approximately 0.5 dB.



Fig. A3.4-3: Impact of Changes to the Receiving-Antenna Gain on the Demodulator-Input C/N Ratio

# A3.5 Corrective actions if model case requirements cannot be met

The link budget model requirements given in Section A3.2 are provisional values that have been specified for link budget purposes. Therefore, it may be difficult to meet these requirements through review on an individual basis.

However, as in A3.3, calculation results based on this link budget model indicate that if these requirements cannot be met, it may not be possible to receive program signals within the service area. For this reason, the following specifies the corrective actions to be taken if the model-case requirements cannot be met.

### A3.5.1 Corrective action if your stage-to-stage distance is longer than that in the model case

The major problem in this case is a possible reduction in field strength at the relay station's receiver due to fading.

- (1) Use a receiving antenna larger than that (1.8 m in diameter) in the model case to increase the received voltage.
- (2) Connect multiple TTLs to ensure a more stable reception environment than when broadcast waves are relayed.
- (3) Provide an optical-fiber or other type of cable circuit. Note, however, that if SFN is to be implemented, extreme caution should be exercised in establishing synchronization with the higher-rank station providing a digital circuit.

# A3.5.2 Corrective action if the multipath disturbance, SFN sneak path, and co-channel interference levels are higher than those in the model case

In this case, the major problem is possible degradation of the equivalent C/N ratio of the output due to various types of interference at the relay station's receiver.

- (1) Use cancellers and properly select the reception position to reduce multipath and SFN sneak path.
- (2) Similarly, use cancellers and properly select the reception position to reduce co-channel interference. Keep in mind that cancellers may not provide a substantial improvement. Use TTLs to provide a stable reception environment.
- (3) When the SFN sneak path is a key problem to be addressed, change the frequency to provide MFN, if possible. Note that this choice is not readily feasible in terms of the current use of channels. However, it can be taken into consideration if frequencies are reorganized, as when analog broadcasting is terminated.

### A3.5.3 Corrective action when there are many stages

The model case discussed earlier shows that the relaying of broadcast waves with five stages or more would be difficult. For this reason, if there are many stages, the degradation of the C/N ratio at each stage must be reduced to a greater extent than in the model case.

- (1) Use TTLs, particularly at relay stations with high levels of multipath, SFN sneak path, and co-channel interference, to provide a better C/N ratio.
- (2) Use TS system TTLs. This eliminates the need to add noise from the previous stages. Then, consider reducing the number of stages in an equivalent manner.
- (3) Digital demodulation and, if necessary, error correction and other steps eliminate the need to total the noise, which has accumulated up to the MFN relay station, by OFDM demodulation and modulation. Note, however, that not only the demodulation and modulation processes but also the error-correction process produce delays. Therefore, caution should be exercised in the use of these processes.

# A3.5.4 Corrective action when multipath and radio-interference conditions within the service area are harsher than in the model case

If districts under harsh reception conditions are concentrated within a specific range, a supplementary relay station may be provided.

If districts under harsh reception conditions are scattered, depending on the multipath status, a receiving antenna with higher performance may be provided, a taller antenna may be used, or the antenna location may be changed. Note, however, that increased antenna gain will not offer any outstanding advantage, as discussed in (2) of Section A3.4.1. Therefore, the primary focus should be on improving the multipath DU ratio and improving the DU ratio in relation to undesired waves through improved directionality.

# A3.6 Effect of changing transmission parameters, and problems

In the Report of the Frequency Planning Technical Committee of the Telecommunication Technology Council, a study was conducted based on the assumption that the transmission parameters for terrestrial broadcasting (64QAM and an inner-code coding rate of 7/8) that would provide the maximum transmission capacity were used.

As shown in Table A3.3-2, replacing these parameters with those that offer better resistance to degradation could be highly effective. However, this will result in a lower transmission capacity. Therefore, this alternative should be reviewed in terms of video quality.

With some carriers, changing the transmitting-equipment settings will make it impossible to use transmission parameters in the future that provide the maximum transmission capacity, even if it is assumed that parameters offering better resistance to degradation are used. As a result, future expansion of the service may be hindered.

For this reason, the margin produced through the use of parameters that offer better resistance to degradation must be used primarily to ensure stable reception with the service area. It is preferable to leave the criteria for transmitting equipment unchanged.

# A3.7 Specific network construction process

A model case was used in the link budget discussed in this document. Therefore, it is necessary to gain a full understanding of propagation conditions and interference levels to enable the link budgets on an individual basis in each network construction effort.

# TRANSMISSION SYSTEM FOR DIGITAL TERRESTRIAL TELEVISION BROADCASTING

ARIB STANDARD

ARIB STD-B31 VERSION 2.2-E1 (March 18th, 2014)

This Document is based on the ARIB standard of "Transmission System For Digital Terrestrial Television Broadcasting" in Japanese edition and translated into English in March, 2014.

Published by

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses

11F, Nittochi Building 1-4-1 Kasumigaseki, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100-0013, Japan

> TEL 81-3-5510-8590 FAX 81-3-3592-1103

Printed in Japan All rights reserved